

# *Tiki Reference Guide*

**NEW:** As of March 2011 the [Tiki Suite Proposal](#) is being implemented to re-organize the Tiki documentation into a distinct set of guides (in preparation for Tiki7):

- [Tiki Installation Guide](#)
- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- Tiki User Guide
- Tiki Administrators Guide

This **Tiki Reference Guide** includes information on each Tiki administration page and tab. Links from the Tiki help system direct to these pages.

In this guide, you'll learn how to access each of the Tiki [Admin Panels](#), what each is for, and information on the options included in each page/tab. There are also links to specific "How To" procedures in the User and Administrators Guide.



The Tiki documentation is a community effort. We invite you to join us! See <http://doc.tikiwiki.org/Welcome+Authors>.

This documentation is licensed under a Commons Attribution - ShareAlike License.



For details, see <http://doc.tiki.org/Creative+Commons+Attribution-ShareAlike+License> and <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/>.

## ***Table of Contents***

General Administration.....	13
General Preferences tab.....	13
General Settings tab.....	23
Navigation tab.....	27
Date and Time tab.....	30
Date and Time Formats.....	32
Change Admin Password tab.....	33
Features Admin.....	35
Global Features.....	35
Tiki sections and features (1.10).....	38
Major features.....	38
Minor features.....	39
Site-wide features.....	39
Technical Features.....	39
User interface enhancement features.....	39
Experimental Features.....	39
Content Features.....	39
Administration Features.....	39
User Features.....	40
Tiki sections and features (1.9.x).....	40
Content Features.....	41
Administration Features.....	42
User Features.....	43
General Layout options.....	43
Layout-per-section Options.....	44
Interface.....	45
Programmer.....	46
New.....	48
Experimental.....	49
Alias.....	51
Login Administration page.....	52
General Preferences.....	52
Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity.....	65
CustomFields.....	65
LDAP Authentication tab.....	65
LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4.....	68
Changes.....	68
Settings.....	69
LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X.....	70
LDAP Pear::Auth General Settings Overview.....	70

Examples.....	73
Debugging.....	74
Common Problems and Workarounds.....	75
How it works.....	75
LDAP Pear::Auth Troubleshooting.....	76
Aliases.....	77
PAM Authentication tab.....	77
CAS Authentication tab.....	81
Intro.....	82
Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4).....	83
Requirements for phpBB Authentication.....	87
Enabling phpBB Authentication.....	87
Community Administration.....	89
User Features tab.....	89
Community General Settings Tab.....	91
Friendship Network tab.....	97
General Description.....	98
Key Function and sub-features.....	98
Typical Uses.....	98
Admin Profiles Page.....	100
For more information.....	100
Alias.....	101
Apply Profiles tab.....	101
Requirements.....	103
Details of Supported Profiles.....	103
Requirements.....	104
Details of Supported Profiles.....	104
Profiles Advanced tab.....	104
Look & Feel.....	106
Alias.....	107
Theme tab.....	107
Key Function and sub-features.....	108
Examples.....	109
General Layout Options tab.....	110
Key Function and sub-features.....	114
Examples.....	117
Shadow Layer tab.....	117
Pagination Links tab.....	120
UI Effects tab.....	121
Custom CSS tab.....	122
Miscellaneous tab.....	123
Internationalization (i18n).....	126
Overview.....	126

Babelfish Links.....	127
Customized String Translation tab.....	128
Modules.....	130
Modules vs. Plugins.....	131
Related pages.....	131
Tiki Modules.....	132
Feature Modules.....	132
User's Configuration Modules.....	133
Navigation Modules.....	133
Recent Changes Modules.....	133
"Best of" Modules.....	134
Help and Support Modules.....	135
Search Modules.....	135
MyTiki Modules.....	136
Miscellaneous Modules.....	136
More information.....	137
Meta Tags Configuration page.....	138
Meta Tags Config.....	141
Performance Admin page.....	143
Performance Tab.....	143
Bytecode Cache Tab.....	145
Wiki tab.....	145
Database tab.....	146
Memcache tab.....	147
Plugins tab.....	148
Major Slowdown tab.....	149
Sessions tab.....	150
Security Administration.....	152
General Security.....	156
Spam Protection.....	157
Search Results.....	157
Site Access.....	157
Tokens.....	158
Clipperz Online Password Management.....	158
Spam Protection tab.....	158
Prevent automatic/robot registration.....	160
Clipperz online password manager.....	164
Comments Admin page.....	166
Comments.....	169
Alias.....	170
Feeds Admin page.....	171
Feeds.....	172
Overview.....	172

Key Function and sub-features.....	172
Setting up feeds.....	173
More information.....	174
Alias.....	175
Feeds General Preferences tab.....	175
Feeds.....	177
Connect page.....	180
Advanced Ratings page.....	181
Calculation configuration.....	183
Advanced Rating.....	185
Sorting items according to advanced rating.....	185
Set-up.....	185
Reference.....	187
mul (Multiply).....	187
add (Sum).....	187
rating-average and rating-sum.....	187
str.....	188
article-info.....	188
attribute.....	189
Appendix.....	189
Related.....	190
Wiki Admin page.....	191
Wiki General Preferences tab.....	191
Wiki Features tab.....	197
Wiki Staging & Approval tab.....	205
Admin preferences and setup.....	207
Wiki Page Staging and Approval.....	209
Sample use case.....	210
Limitations.....	212
Profile.....	212
Wiki Page Listings tab.....	212
File Galleries.....	216
Table of contents.....	216
Key features.....	221
File Gallery improvements in Tiki6.....	221
File Gallery improvements in Tiki5.....	221
File Gallery improvements in Tiki3.....	221
From Here.....	223
Alias.....	223
See Also.....	223
Blogs.....	224
Feature Overview.....	224
About Trackback.....	224

About XMLRPC.....	225
Blog Revamp.....	225
Image Galleries.....	227
Feature Overview.....	227
Articles.....	229
Table of contents.....	229
Feature Overview.....	234
Topics.....	235
Article Types.....	235
Alias.....	236
Forums.....	237
Feature Overview.....	237
Trackers (Overview).....	239
What are Trackers?.....	239
Related Pages.....	239
Four Steps to make a Tracker.....	240
What can Trackers be used for?.....	240
Demos of Trackers used for production.....	241
Related links.....	241
Profiles.....	241
Alias.....	241
Polls.....	243
Related Pages.....	243
Using Polls.....	243
Polls as a Plugin.....	243
Polls as a Side Module.....	243
Permissions.....	244
Polls and Anonymous.....	244
Poll templates.....	245
Calendar.....	246
New in version 2 and version 3.....	247
General.....	248
Example.....	248
Categories.....	250
Category Permissions.....	250
Score.....	252
How scoring works.....	252
How stars work.....	252
Typical Uses.....	253
Related pages.....	253
Tags.....	254
Tags.....	255
What can I tag within Tiki?.....	255

Modules.....	256
User.....	256
Alias.....	257
Freetags General Settings tab.....	257
Admin.....	258
Perms.....	259
Search.....	261
Search.....	262
Overview.....	263
Search General Settings tab.....	264
Search Results tab.....	269
FAQs.....	271
Directory.....	274
Directory.....	282
Feature Overview.....	282
Maps.....	284
Google Maps.....	286
Copyright.....	288
Copyright Management User.....	290
Editing Copyright Notices.....	290
User Files.....	292
User Files.....	294
Configuring userfiles.....	294
Messages.....	295
Webmail.....	297
Webmail.....	298
Configuring webmail accounts.....	298
Reading emails.....	298
Writing emails.....	299
WYSIWYG.....	300
Wysiwyg Editor.....	303
Site Ads and Bannders.....	304
Intertiki.....	306
Table of contents.....	306
Introduction.....	315
Assumptions:.....	315
Key Function and sub-features.....	315
Configuration example.....	315
Explanation of fields.....	316
Pictoral Examples.....	317
Intertiki client 1: doc.tikiwiki.org.....	318
Intertiki client 2: edu.tikiwiki.org.....	318
Intertiki Server: tikiwiki.org.....	318

Hosting example.....	318
Intertiki internal details.....	320
Get version : <code>intertiki:get_version</code> .....	320
Remote login : <code>intertiki.validate</code> .....	320
Future enhancements.....	320
Trouble shooting.....	320
Intertiki Client tab.....	321
Intertiki Server tab.....	322
Webservice Registration.....	324
Search Engine Friendly URL.....	325
Video.....	327
Kaltura tab.....	327
Kaltura Video Editing.....	329
1. Setting up a Kaltura account in Tiki.....	331
2. Using Kaltura feature in Tiki.....	333
Ustream Watershed tab.....	333
Ustream Watershed.....	336
Social networks.....	337
Activate Twitter integration.....	347
User authorization.....	347
Setting up facebook integration.....	348
Step 0.....	348
Step 1.....	348
Step 2.....	348
Step 3.....	349
Step 4.....	350
Step 5.....	351
Step 6.....	351
User authorization.....	354
Setting up bit.ly as URL shortener.....	354
Using twitter and facebook in shoutbox.....	355
Using twitter and facebook to share a page.....	355
Using ShareThis.....	355



## Tiki Reference Guide

**NEW:** As of March 2011 the [Tiki Suite Proposal](#) is being implemented to re-organize the Tiki documentation into a distinct set of guides (in preparation for Tiki7):

- [Tiki Installation Guide](#)
- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- Tiki User Guide
- Tiki Administrators Guide

For the older navigation structure see [Features](#)

This **Tiki Reference Guide** includes information on each Tiki administration page and tab. Links from the Tiki help system direct to these pages.



In this guide, you'll learn how to access each of the Tiki [Admin Panels](#), what each is for, and information on the options included in each page/tab. There are also links to specific "How To" procedures in the User and Administrators Guide.

The Tiki documentation is a community effort. We invite you to join us! See <http://doc.tikiwiki.org/Welcome+Authors>.

This documentation is licensed under a Commons Attribution - ShareAlike License.



For details, see <http://doc.tiki.org/Creative+Commons+Attribution-ShareAlike+License> and <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.5/>.

## Table of contents:

- [General Admin](#)
  - [General Preferences](#)
  - [General Settings](#)
  - [Navigation](#)
  - [Date and Time](#)
  - [Change Admin Password](#)
- [Features Admin](#)

- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
- [Login Config](#)
  - [Login General Preferences](#)
  - [LDAP authentication](#)
  - [PAM authentication](#)
  - [Shibboleth Authentication](#)
  - [CAS Authentication](#)
  - [phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [Web Server Authentication](#)
- [Community](#)
  - [User Features](#)
  - [Community General Settings](#)
  - [Friendship Network](#)
- [Profiles](#)
  - [Apply Profiles](#)
  - [Profiles Advanced](#)
- [Look and Feel](#)
  - [Look and Feel Theme](#)
  - [General Layout Options](#)
  - [Shadow Layer](#)
  - [Pagination Links](#)
  - [UI Effects](#)
  - [Custom CSS](#)
  - [Miscellaneous](#)
- [i18n](#)
  - [Internationalization](#)
  - [Babelfish Links](#)
  - [Customized String Translation](#)
- [Editing and Plugins](#)
  - [Editing and Plugins General Settings](#)
  - [Plugins](#)
  - [Plugin Aliases](#)
- [Module](#)
- [Meta Tags](#)
- [Performance Admin Panel](#)
  - [Performance](#)

- [Bytecode Cache](#)
- [Wiki tab](#)
- [Performance Database](#)
- [Performance Memcache](#)
- [Performance Plugins](#)
- [Major Slowdown tab](#)
- [Sessions tab](#)
- [Security](#)
  - [General Security](#)
  - [Spam Protection](#)
  - [Security Search Results](#)
  - [Site Access](#)
  - [Security Tokens](#)
  - [Clipperz online password manager](#)
- [Comments](#)
- [Feeds](#)
  - [Feeds General Preferences](#)
  - [Feeds Feeds](#)
- [Connect](#)
- [Rating page](#)
- [Administer Wiki](#)
  - [Wiki General Preferences](#)
  - [Wiki Features](#)
  - [Wiki Page Staging and Approval](#)
  - [Wiki Page Listings](#)
  - [Wiki Tools](#)
- [File Gallery](#)
  - [File Gallery General Settings](#)
  - [Gallery Listings](#)
  - [Admin Gallery Listings](#)
  - [Gallery Search Indexing](#)
- [Blog](#)
  - [Blog Listings](#)
- [Image Gallery](#)
- [Articles](#)
  - [Articles General Settings](#)
  - [Articles Listing](#)
- [Forums](#)
  - [Forums General Settings](#)
  - [Forums Listing](#)

- [Trackers](#)
  - [Polls](#)
  - [Calendar](#)
  - [Category](#)
  - [Score](#)
  - [Tags](#)
    - [Freetags General Settings](#)
    - [3D Tag Browser Configuration](#)
  - [Search](#)
    - [Search General Settings](#)
    - [Search Results](#)
  - [FAQ Admin](#)
  - [Directory](#)
  - [Maps Config](#)
  - [Google Maps](#)
  - [Copyright](#)
  - [User Files](#)
  - [Messages](#)
  - [Webmail](#)
  - [Wysiwyg](#)
  - [Site Ads and Banners](#)
  - [Intertiki](#)
    - [Intertiki Client](#)
    - [Intertiki Server](#)
  - [Webservice Registration](#)
  - [Search Engine Friendly URL](#)
  - [Video](#)
    - [Kaltura](#)
    - [Ustream Watershed](#)
  - [Social Networks](#)
-

# General Administration

## Overview

Configure general Tiki preferences and settings that apply site-wide.



Note: Some General preferences require specific features to be enabled on the [Features Admin](#) panel.

## Related Topics

- [Installation](#)
- [Initial Configuration](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access



Click the **General** icon on the [Admin Panel](#)

or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=general>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [General Preferences](#)
- [General Settings](#)
- [Navigation](#)
- [Date and Time](#)
- [Change Admin Password](#)

## Note

In [Tiki2](#), all General Admin options were on a [single tab](#).

---

## *General Preferences tab*

## Overview

Configure site-wide preferences

## Related Topics

- [Installation](#)
- [System Log](#)
- [Look and Feel](#)

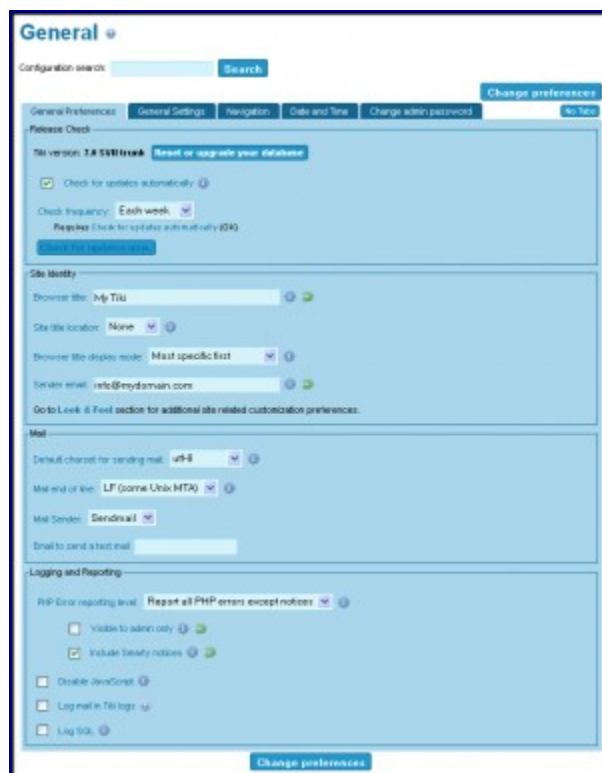
## To Access

From the [General Admin](#) page, click the **General Preferences** tab.

## Note

Some of these options can be configured during [Installation](#)  
In [Tiki2](#), all [General Admin](#) options were on a single tab.

## No Tabs 6.x3.x2.x




General Preferences tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Release Check</b>		
Tiki version	Displays your current Tiki version. Click <b>Reset or Upgrade Your Database</b> to run the <a href="#">Tiki installer</a> .	
Check for updates automatically	If enabled, Tiki will automatically check for new updates each time you access the <a href="#">Admin Home</a> page, based on your <b>Check frequency</b> selection. <b>Tip:</b> Subscribe to the <a href="#">Tiki Newsletter</a> to be notified of new releases.	Enabled

Setting	Description	Default
Check frequency	How often Tiki should check for updates. This field applies only if <b>Check for updates automatically</b> is enabled. Click <b>Check for Updates Now</b> to perform an update check.	Each week
<b>Site Identity</b>		
Browser title	The text to include in the <b>TITLE</b> tag for each Tiki page. This will appear in the titlebar of your users' browser.	
Site title location	Location of the site title in the browser's titlebar, relative to the description fo the current page: <b>Before</b> , <b>After</b> , or <b>None</b> .	None
Browser title display mode	When using <a href="#">Breadcrumbs</a> , specify which <b>Browser title</b> to display: <b>Most specific first</b> , <b>Least specific first</b> , <b>Current only</b> , or page <b>Description</b> .	Most specific first
Sender email	The return email address used by Tiki when sending <a href="#">Mail notifications</a> .	
<b>Mail</b>		
Default charset for sending mail	Specify the <a href="#">character encoding</a> used by Tiki when sending <a href="#">mail notifications</a> .	utf-8
Mail end of line	Specify the end-of-line (EOL) character used by Tiki when sending <a href="#">mail notifications</a> : <b>CRLF</b> or <b>LF</b> .	LF
Mail sender	Specify if Tiki should use <b>Sendmail</b> (the PHP mail() function) or <b>SMTP</b> to send <a href="#">mail notifications</a> .	Sendmail
Email to send a test mail	To test Tiki's ability to send <a href="#">mail notifications</a> , enter an email address to which to send a test message, and click <b>Change preferences</b>	
<b>Logging and Reporting</b>		
PHP Error reporting level	Specify how Tiki should report any PHP errors: <b>No reporting</b> , <b>All reporting</b> , or <b>All reporting except notices</b> .	Report all PHP errors except notices
Visible to admin only	If enabled, errors will be shown to only the Admin user.	Disabled
Include Smarty notices	If enabled, Tiki will display Smarty notices, too.	Enabled
Disable JavaScript	If enabled, all site JavaScript will be disable, even if allowed by the browser.  Caution: Use only for testing or troubleshooting. When enabled, many Tiki features will not operate correctly.	Disabled
Log mail in Tiki logs	If enabled, a line of type <b>mail</b> will be included in the <a href="#">System Log</a> with the destination address and subject of each email sent.	Disabled
Log SQL	If enabled, all SQL queries will be registered in the database in the <b>adodb_logsql</b> table.  Caution: Do not enable this feature all the time. It can be very resource intensive and will impact performance.	Disabled
Log queries using more than	Use to log <i>only</i> queries that use a specific amount of time.	0.05 seconds

## General

General preferences and settings



CHANGE PREFERENCES

General Preferences | General Settings | Date and Time Formats | Admin Password

Release Check

Tiki version: **3.0rc1** [RESET OR UPGRADE YOUR DATABASE](#)

☒ Check for updates automatically.

Check frequency: Each week

TikiWiki will check for updates when you access the main Administration page.

[CHECK FOR UPDATES NOW](#)

Site Identity

Browser title:

Sender email:

Go to [Look & Feel](#) section for additional site related customization preferences.

Home Page

☒ Use group homepages.

☐ Go to group homepage only if login from default homepage.

Use TikiWiki feature as homepage: Wiki

or

☐ Use different URL as home page:

Miscellaneous

Server OS: Windows

☒ Smarty Security  
(Do not allow php code in smarty templates.)

☒ Use PEAK::Date library.

Default charset for sending mail: utf-8

Mail end of line: LF (some Unix MTA)

Logging and Reporting

PHP error reporting level: Report all errors except notices

☒ Visible to Admin only.

☐ Include Smarty notices.

☐ Log mail in Tiki logs.

☒ Log SQL.

Log queries using more than 0.05 seconds  
This may impact performance.

☐ Add HTML comment at start and end of each Smarty template (TPL).

CSRF Security

Use these options to protect against cross-site request forgeries (CSRF).

☐ Require confirmation if possible CSRF detected.

☒ Protect against CSRF with a ticket.

See [Admin > Security Admin](#) for additional security settings.

CHANGE PREFERENCES

## Setting

## Description

### Release Check



Setting	Description
Tiki version	Displays your current Tiki version. Click <b>Reset or Upgrade Your Database</b> to run the <a href="#">Tiki installer</a> .
Check for updates automatically	If enabled, Tiki will automatically check for new updates (based on your <b>Check frequency</b> selection) each time you access the <a href="#">Admin Home</a> page. Click <b>Check for Updates Now</b> to perform an update check.
<b>Site Identity</b>	
Browser title	The text to include in the
Sender email	The return email address used by Tiki when sending <a href="#">Mail notifications</a> .
<b>Home Page</b>	
Use group homepages	Specify that each <a href="#">group</a> has its own homepage. After a user logs in, they will be taken to the group's home page. Use the <a href="#">Groups management</a> panel to define the homepage for each group. If the <b>Go to group homepage only if login from default homepage</b> option is enabled, the user will be taken to the groups homepage <b>only</b> if they logged in from the Tiki default homepage.
Use TikiWiki feature as homepage	Select the home page for your Tiki. Select from the list of <a href="#">enabled features</a> such as wiki, articles, or blog.
Use different URL as home page	Specify any valid URL as the home page for your Tiki. This must be a fully qualified URL. For example, if you want to use a different wiki page (other than HomePage) as your Tiki's home, use: <b>tiki-index.php?page=PAGENAME</b> .  This option will override the <b>Use TikiWiki feature as homepage</b> setting.
<b>Miscellaneous</b>	
Server OS	Select the operating system of the server hosting your Tiki: Unix, Windows, or Other/Unknown. Tiki will attempt to recognize your server.
Smarty security	
Use PEAR::Date library	
Default charset for sending mail:	Specify the <a href="#">character encoding</a> used by Tiki when sending <a href="#">mail notifications</a> .
Mail end of line	Specify the end-of-line (EOL) character used by Tiki when sending <a href="#">mail notifications</a> : CRLF or LF.
<b>Logging and Reporting</b>	
PHP error reporting level	Specify how Tiki should report any PHP errors: No reporting, All reporting, or All reporting except notices.  If <b>Visible to Admin only</b> is enabled, errors will be shown to only the Admin user.  If <b>Include Smarty notices</b> is enabled, any Smarty notices will be shown, too.
Log mail in Tiki logs	If enabled, a line of type <code>mail</code> will be included in the <a href="#">System Log</a> with the destination address and subject of each email sent.
Log SQL	If enabled, all SQL queries will be registered in the database in the <code>adodb_logsqli</code> table.

Setting	Description
	Use the <b>Log queries using more than</b> option to limit the logging of queries to queries that use a specific amount of time.
	<b>Caution:</b> Do not enable this feature all the time. It can be very resource intensive and will impact performance.
<b>CSRF Security</b>	Require confirmation if possible CSRF detected. Protect against CSRF with ticket.



Click the **General** icon on the [Admin Panel](#) to display the **General** screen. Use the **General Admin** panel to set general Tiki preferences and settings.

These settings apply site-wide to your Tiki. Some General preferences require specific features to be enabled on the [Features Admin](#) panel.

#### General Preferences

**Note:** Prior to 1.9.9, you could specific the Tiki theme in the General Preferences. For later releases, use the Administration: Theme? page.

Setting	Description
Use group homepages	Specify that each <a href="#">group</a> has its own homepage. After a user logs in, they will be taken to the group's home page. Use the <a href="#">Groups Management</a> panel to define the homepage for each group.
Go to group homepage only if login from default homepage	If enabled, the user will be taken to the group's home <b>only</b> if they logged in from the Tiki default homepage (as defined by the <b>Home Page</b> field).
Use URI as home page	Specify any valid URI as the home page for your Tiki. This must be a fully qualified URI. For example, if you want to use a different wiki page (other than HomePage) as your Tiki's home, use: <b>tiki-index.php?page=PAGENAME</b> .
Home page	Select the home page for your Tiki. Select from the list of <a href="#">enabled features</a> (such as wiki, articles, or blog).  Note: This setting will be ignored if you selected the <b>Use URI...</b> setting.
OS	Select the operating system of the server hosting your Tiki: Unix, Windows, or Unknown/Other. Tiki will attempt to recognize your web server.
PHP error reporting level for non-admin	Specify how Tiki should report any PHP errors to non-Admin users.  Note: Select <b>Report only for admin</b> to hide error reports from your regular site users and display the errors <i>only</i> to admins.  <b>New in 1.10:</b> Select one of three error reporting levels: "No error reporting", "Report all PHP errors"

	or "Report all errors except notices." Use the "visible to admin only" checkbox to hide errors from end users. Use the "smarty notice reporting" checkbox to add notices from the templating system.	
Log Mail in Tiki Logs	If activated, a line of type mail will be added in tiki Logs with the destination email address and the subject for each email sent. If the email is shown to be sent and does not arrive at the destination does not receive the mail it means that the mail server is not configured properly (see sendmail/php documentation) or that the mail has been considered as spam by the destination. If an error occurs, a line of type mail error will be added to Tiki logs (even if the feature is not activated)	tw>=1.1 0
Log SQL	If this feature is checked, all the queries will be registered in the database in the table adodb_logsqli. <b>Caution:</b> Do not activate this feature all time. It can be very resource intensive!	tw >=1.10
Default charset for sending mail	Specify the <a href="#">character set encoding</a> used by Tiki when sending <a href="#">Mail notifications</a> .	
Mail end of line	Specify the end of line character used by Tiki when sending <a href="#">Mail notifications</a> : CRLF or LF.	

## General Settings

Setting	Description
Disallow access to the site	Use this setting to "close" your Tiki (such as for maintenance). Users attempting to access your site will see only a login. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.
Message to display when site is closed	Specify the message that visitors will see when accessing your site. This setting applies only when <b>Disallow access...</b> is selected.
Disallow access when load is above the threshold	Use this option to "close" your Tiki when the server load exceeds a specific threshold. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.
Max average server load threshold in the last minute	Define the maximum server load. This setting applies only when <b>Disallow access...</b> is selected.
Message to display when server is too busy	Specify the message that visitors will see when accessing your site if the site is closed due to excessive server load. When the server load falls below the threshold, users will be allowed back into the site.
Open external links in new window	Specify if links to external sites should open in a new browser window. If not selected, all links will reuse the current browser window. Moved to <a href="#">Text Area Admin</a> at least at v2.2
Display modules to all groups always	Specify if all <a href="#">Module</a> are visible to all <a href="#">group</a> — regardless of the specific module settings. If not selected, use the <a href="#">Module Admin</a> page to specify which modules are visible to which groups.
Use cache for external pages	Specify if external pages are cached and stored on your server.
Use cache for external images	Specify if external images are cached and stored on your server.
Use direct pagination links	
Display menus as folders	Specify if menu options be displayed using the folder icon <input type="checkbox"/> . If not selected, a + and - will be used instead.

Use gzipped output	Specify if Tiki should use <a href="#">GZIP</a> to compress pages before sending them to the user's browser. Selecting this option will reduce your site's bandwidth usage. See <a href="#">Compression</a> for more information.
Count admin pageviews	Specify if the Tiki statistics will include page views from users with Admin permission.
Hide anonymous-only modules from registered users	Specify if <a href="#">Module</a> with <i>only</i> <a href="#">anonymous</a> permission are visible to non-anonymous users.
Server name (for absolute URIs)	The server name to use when creating absolute URIs.
Browser title	The text to include in the A directory on your web server to use for temporary files.
Temporary directory	Note: You must have <b>write-</b> access to this directory. It is also where your session files if saved on disk will go. If you do not want interference with other application than redefines the session lifetime, it is better to define a directory specific to tikiwiki.
Sender email	The return email address used by Tiki when sending <a href="#">Mail notifications</a> .
Contact user	Specify the user who receives mail from the <a href="#">Contact Us</a> feature. You must enable the <b>Contact Us</b> feature on the <a href="#">Features Admin</a> page.
Store session data in database	Specify if session data will be stored in the database instead of memory. Use this feature to share load between servers.
Session lifetime in minutes	Specify the session time. (0 will use the default session.gc_maxlifetime defines in php.ini). If session uses files, the files will go in the temporary directory.
Use proxy	Specify if your server requires a proxy to access external web pages (i.e. to cache them). If selected, specify the <b>Proxy Host</b> and <b>Proxy Port</b> .
Maximum number of records in listings	Specify the maximum number of records (items) to show when Tiki displays pages.
Help URL	Specify the root URL for your Tiki's online help. To use the default Tiki help on this site, use: <a href="http://doc.tikiwiki.org/tiki-index.php?page=">http://doc.tikiwiki.org/tiki-index.php?page=</a> Note: This option applies only when the <b>Help System</b> feature has been enabled on the <a href="#">Features Admin</a> page. In 2.0 there is no such feature, there is instead a tick box "Help System:" just above this field, this now turns the help system on and off.

## Date and Time Formats

Specify the Long Date, Short Date, Long Time, and Short Time formats. The following table lists the possible format strings:

### Day

%a	Abbreviated weekday name according to the current locale
%A	Full weekday name according to the current locale
%d	Day of the month as a decimal number (range 01 to 31)
%e	Day of the month as a decimal number, a single digit is preceded by a space (range 1 to 31)
%u	Day of the week as a decimal, with 1 representing Monday (range 1 to 7)
%w	Day of the week as a decimal, with 0 being Sunday (range 0 to 6)

**%j** Day of the year as a decimal number (range 001 to 366)

### **Week**

**%U** Week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Sunday as the first day of the first week

**%W** Week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Monday as the first day of the first week

**%V** The ISO 8601:1988 week number of the current year as a decimal number, range 01 to 53, where week 1 is the first week that has at least 4 days in the current year, and with Monday as the first day of the week. (Use %G or %g for the year component that corresponds to the week number for the specified timestamp.)

### **Month**

**%b** Abbreviated month name according to the current locale

**%B** Full month name according to the current locale

**%m** Month as a decimal number (range 01 to 12)

### **Year**

**%C** Century number (the year divided by 100 and truncated to an integer, range 00 to 99)

**%G** The 4-digit year corresponding to the ISO week number (see %V). This has the same format and value as %Y, except that if the ISO week number belongs to the previous or next year, that year is used instead.

**%g** Like %G, but without the century.

**%y** Year as a decimal number without a century (range 00 to 99)

**%Y** Year as a decimal number including the century

### **Time**

**%H** Hour as a decimal number using a 24-hour clock (range 00 to 23)

**%I** Hour as a decimal number using a 12-hour clock (range 01 to 12)

**%M** Minute as a decimal number

**%p** Either **am** or **pm** according to the given time value, or the corresponding strings for the current locale

**%r** Time in a.m. and p.m. notation

**%R** Time in 24 hour notation

**%S** Second as a decimal number

**%T** Current time, equal to %H:%M:%S

### **Notes**

**%c** Preferred date and time representation for the current locale

**%x** Preferred date representation for the current locale without the time

**%X** Preferred time representation for the current locale without the date

**%D** Same as %m/%d/%y

**%h** Same as %b

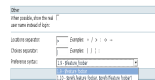
%n	Newline character
%t	Tab character
%Z or %z	Time zone or name or abbreviation
%%	A literal % character

See the [PHP Manual](#) for details.

## Other Settings

Setting	Description	Tikiwiki version
When possible, show the real user name instead of login:	Check this box to enable this feature	>= 1.10
Favicon icon file name	Specify the name of the <a href="#">Favorite's Icon</a> (or page icon) for your Tiki. Note: The file must be in your root directory.	>= 1.9. Moved to Look&Feel/other in 1.10
Favicon icon MIME type	Specify the format of the <b>Favicon</b> : PNG, BMP, or X-ICON.	>= 1.9. Moved to Look&Feel/other in 1.10
Locations separator	The icon used in the breadcrumbs when displaying the <a href="#">category</a> or <a href="#">structure</a> path.	>= 1.9
Choices separator:	The character used to separate choices whenever they appear. Examples:   /   :	>= 1.10
Preference syntax:	<b>"1.9 - \$feature_foobar"</b> recommended for upgraded sites with 1.9.x theme styles not yet upgraded to 1.10 <b>"1.10 - \$prefs.feature_foobar, \$prefs['feature_foobar']"</b> recommended for upgraded sites using already 1.10 compliant theme styles	>= 1.10

- Example for an upgraded site to Tikiwiki 1.10 but still using an old 1.9.x theme style:



## Register This Site

Use this option to register your Tiki with [tikiwiki.org](https://tikiwiki.org) and join the [Tiki community](#).

## Change Admin Password

Use this option to change your Admin password. Enter a new password (case sensitive), repeat the password for verification, and click **Change Password**.

## *General Settings tab*

### **Overview**

Configure general settings for specific Tiki features

### **To Access**

From the [General Admin](#) page, click the **General Settings** tab.

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x3.x](#)





The screenshot shows the 'General' settings tab in Tiki. It includes sections for Server (Temporary directory, Use proxy, Host, Port), Multi-domain (Multi-domain, Multi-domain Configuration), Site Terminal (Site Terminal, Site Terminal Configuration), Contact (Contact Us, Contact user, Contact user address), Stats (Stats, Partner Stats, Count admin pageviews), Print (PDF from URL, Webkit (withhtmltopdf), Webkit path), and Miscellaneous (Help System, Help URL, Request help).

General Settings tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Server</b>		
Temporary directory	Directory on your server, relative to your Tiki installation, for storing temporary files. Tiki must have full read and write access to this directory.	temp
Use proxy	Specify if Tiki requires a proxy to access the internet. If enabled, you can specify your proxy <b>Host</b> and <b>Port</b> settings.	Disabled
<b>Multi-domain</b>		
Multi-domain	Use to map domain names to <a href="#">perspectives</a> in order to simulate multiple domains. If enabled, use the <b>Multi-domain Configuration</b> area to specify the domains (one per line)	Disabled
<b>Site Terminal</b>		
Site Terminal	If enabled, use the <b>Site Terminal Configuration</b> area to specify the network prefixes (one per line, using CIDR notation)	Disabled



Setting	Description	Default
<b>Contact Us</b>		
Contact Us	Enables the <a href="#">Contact Us</a> feature. If enabled, you can also specify to <b>Allow anonymous visitor sto use the "Contact Us" feature</b> and to which <b>User</b> to send the contact messages.  Tip: You can use <a href="#">Trackers</a> to create custom Contact Us forms.	Disabled
<b>Stats</b>		
Stats	If enabled, Tiki will maintain a page with basic statistics (such as number and size of wiki pages, days online, and so on)	Disabled
Referrer stats	If enabled, Tiki will maintain a list of site referrals to your Tiki	Disabled
Count admin pageviews	If enabled, page views when logged in as the <b>admin</b> <i>will</i> be included in the overall site statistics.	Disabled
<b>Print</b>		
PDF from URL	Specify how Tiki will create PDFs of pages. If using <b>Webkit</b> you must include the path (relative to your Tiki installation) of the <b>wkhtmltopdf</b> application. If using <b>Web service</b> , include the full URL to the webservice API.	Disabled
<b>Miscellaneous</b>		
Help system	If enabled, Tiki includes help links (  ) to the Tiki documentation. If enabled, you can specify a <b>Help URL</b> that contains customzied help pages. By default, the Help system uses <a href="http://doc.tiki.org/">http://doc.tiki.org/</a>	Enabled

Setting	Description
Close site	Use this setting to "close" your Tiki (such as for maintenance). Users attempting to access your site will see only a login. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.  Use the <b>Message to display</b> to specify the message that visitors will see when attempting to access your site.  Use this option to "close" your Tiki when the server load exceeds a specific threshold. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.
Close site when server load is above the threshold	Use <b>Maximum average server load threshold in the last minute</b> to define the maximum server load.  Use the <b>Message to display</b> to specify the message that visitors will see when attempting to access your site.
Use proxy	Specify if your server requires a proxy to access external web pages (i.e. to cache them). If selected, specify the <b>Proxy Host</b> and <b>Proxy Port</b> .
On permission denied, display login module	

Setting	Description
<b>Performance</b>	
Cache external pages	Specify if external pages are cached and stored on your server.
Cache external images	Specify if external images are cached and stored on your server.
GZip output	Specify if Tiki should use <a href="#">GZIP</a> to compress pages before sending them to the user's browser. Selecting this option will reduce your site's bandwidth usage. See <a href="#">Compression</a> for more information.
<b>Session</b>	
Store session data in database	Specify if session data will be stored in the database instead of memory. Use this feature to share load between servers.
Session lifetime	Specify the session time. (0 will use the default session.gc_maxlifetime, defined in php.ini). If session uses files, the files will go in the temporary directory.
<b>Server</b>	
Temporary directory:	
Use proxy	
Host:	(You need to set Use proxy)
Port:	(You need to set Use proxy)
<b>Multi-domain</b>	
Multi-domain	(You need to set Perspectives)
Multi-domain Configuration:	One domain per line. Comma separated with perspective ID. Ex.: tiki.org,1
<b>Contact</b>	
Allow anonymous visitors to use the "Contact Us" feature	
Contact user	Specify the user who receives mail from the <a href="#">Contact Us</a> feature. You must enable the <b>Contact Us</b> feature on the <a href="#">Features Admin</a> page.
<b>Stats</b>	
Stats	
Referer Stats	
Count admin pageviews	
<b>Print</b>	
PDF from url	Disabled   Webkit (wkhtmltopdf)   Webservice. You need to either Install wkhtmltopdf ( <a href="http://code.google.com/p/wkhtmltopdf/">http://code.google.com/p/wkhtmltopdf/</a> ) on your server, in which case you enter the appropriate path, or Use a PDF webservice (in which case you add the URL)
Webkit path:	path to wkhtmltopdf in your server (download it from <a href="http://code.google.com/p/wkhtmltopdf/">http://code.google.com/p/wkhtmltopdf/</a> )
Webservice URL:	url for the PDF webservice that you want to use.
<b>Miscellaneous</b>	
Count admin pageviews.	Specify if the Tiki statistics will include page views from users with Admin permission.
Temporary directory	A directory on your web server to use for temporary files.

Setting	Description
	Note: You must have <b>write-</b> access to this directory. It is also where your session files if saved on disk will go. If you do not want interference with other application than redefines the session lifetime, it is better to define a directory specific to tikiwiki.
Help System	Use to enable the TikiWiki online help system. Use the <b>Help URL</b> to specify the root URL for your Tiki's online help. To use the default Tiki help on this site, use: <b><code>http://doc.tikiwiki.org/tiki-index.php?page=</code></b>
Show user's real name instead of login	
Highlight group	
Show user's contribution on the user information page	
Display UserTracker information on the user information page:	
<b>Separators</b>	
Locations	The icon used in the breadcrumbs when displaying the <a href="#">category</a> or <a href="#">structure</a> path.
Choices	Choices separator:   The character used to separate choices whenever they appear.

---

## Navigation tab

### Overview

Configure site navigation features such as menus and error redirects.

### Related Topics

- [Navigation Overview](#)
- [Menus](#)

### To Access


From the [General Admin](#) page, click the **Navigation** tab.

### [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x](#)

Navigation tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Menus</b>		
PHP Layers	Enables PHP Menus (deprecated, use CSS Menus)	Disabled
CSS Menus	If enabled, Tiki will use display CSS-styled (Suckerfish) vertical or horizontal menus.	Enabled
Allow HTML...	If enabled, you can include raw HTML when creating menu options. This coding will be rendered by Tiki <b>without</b> filtering or sanitization. ⚠ This is potentially dangerous, as it allows raw HTML to be added. Be sure to enable this option <b>only</b> if trusted users can create and edit menus.	Disabled
Menu user levels	Enables the Menu user levels feature	Disabled
Featured links	Enables the <a href="#">Featured Links</a> option.	Disabled
Display menus as folders		Enabled

Setting	Description	Default
	 Note: This option applies <i>only</i> for non-CSS menus.	
Menu icons	If enabled, enter the <b>Default path for menu icons</b> , relative to your Tiki installation.	Disabled
<b>Home Page</b>		
Use group home pages	If enabled, each <a href="#">Group</a> will have its own "home" page. If enabled, you can also specify group members will <b>Go to the group home page only if logging in from the default home page</b>	Disabled
Use Tiki feature as homepage	Select the home page for your Tiki. Select from the list of <a href="#">enabled features</a> such as wiki, articles, or blog.	Wiki
Use URL index	Specify any valid URL as the home page for your Tiki. This must be a fully qualified URL. For example, if you want to use a different wiki page (other than HomePage) as your Tiki's home, use: <b>tiki-index.php?page=PAGENAME</b> .  This option will override the <b>Use Tiki feature as homepage</b> setting.	
<b>Redirects</b>		
Domain prefix handling	Select the Domain prefix (www) handling option	Leave as-is
Domain redirects	Comma separated list of domain forwards (one entry per line: from,to). Preserves the from url.	
Redirect on error	Enable the Redirect on error feature	Disabled
Redirect to similar wiki page	If enabled, if a visitor attempts to access a wiki page that does not exist, Tiki will display a similarly named page (instead of showing a "page not found" message).	Disabled
On permission denied, display login module	If enabled, if an Anonymous visitor attempts to access a page to which he does have permission, Tiki will automatically display the <a href="#">Login module</a> . Alternatively, use the <b>Send to URL</b> field to display a specific page (relative to your Tiki installation) instead.	Disabled
Redirect Anonymous on page not found	URL of page to send Anonymous visitor when a page is not found	Disabled
Redirect Registered after account validation	The default page a Registered user sees after account validation is <b>tiki-information.php?msg=Account validated successfully</b> .	
<b>User</b>		
URL to go to when clicking on a username	Override the default user profile page	
<b>Site Access</b>		
Close Site	Use this setting to "close" your Tiki (such as for maintenance). Users attempting to access your site will see only a login. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.	Disabled
	Use the <b>Message to display</b> to specify the message that visitors will see when attempting to access your site.	
Close site when server load is above the	Use this option to "close" your Tiki when the server load exceeds a specific threshold. Only users with specific permission will be allowed to log in.	Disabled

Setting	Description	Default
threshold	Use <b>Maximum average server load threshold in the last minute</b> to define the maximum server load.  Use the <b>Message to display</b> to specify the message that visitors will see when attempting to access your site.	

---

## *Date and Time tab*

### Overview

Configure how Tiki displays date and time information.

### Related Topics

- [Date and Time Features](#)

### To Access

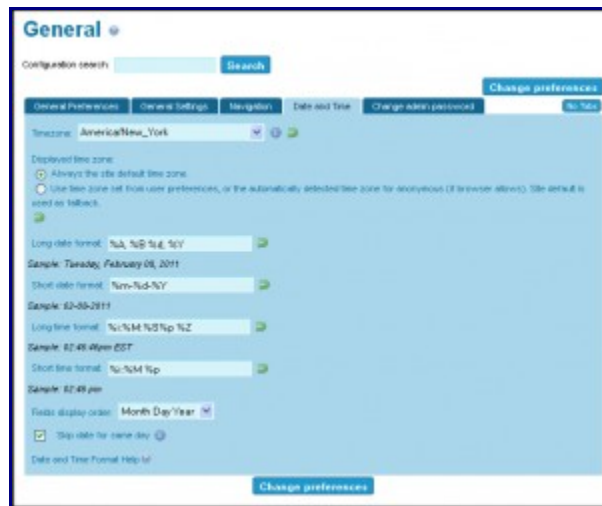
From the [General Admin](#) page, click the **Date and Time** tab.

### Notes

See the [Date and Time Formats table](#) and [PHP Manual](#) for detailed information on date and time settings.

[No Tabs](#)

[6.x3.x](#)



Date and Time tab

Setting	Description	Default
Timezone	Select the default timezone for your site.	UTC
Displayed timezone	Use time zone set from user preferences, or the automatically detected time zone for anonymous (if browser allows). Site default is used as fallback.	Use time zone set from user preferences...
Long date format	Specify how Tiki displays the date	%A %d of %B, %Y
Short date format	Specify how Tiki displays the date	%Y-%m-%d
Long time format	Specify how Tiki displays the time	%H:%M:%S %Z
Short time format	Specify how Tiki displays the	%H:%M
Fields display order		Month, Day Year
Skip date for same day	If enabled, Tiki will skip the date (that is, show <i>only the time</i> ) for items occurring on the current date.	Enabled

Parameter	Description
Default timezone	Select the default timezone for your site. You can also specify if Tiki will <b>Use site default to show times</b> or if attempt to <b>Detect user timezone</b> .
Date and Time	Specify the Long Date, Short Date, Long Time, and Short Time formats. <a href="#">The following table</a> lists the

Parameter	Description
formats	possible format strings
Fields display order	



**Tip:** When you save your changes, Tiki will display a sample of the selected date and time formats.

## *Date and Time Formats*

### **Day**

- %a Abbreviated weekday name according to the current locale
- %A Full weekday name according to the current locale
- %d Day of the month as a decimal number (range 01 to 31)
- %e Day of the month as a decimal number, a single digit is preceded by a space (range 1 to 31)
- %u Day of the week as a decimal, with 1 representing Monday (range 1 to 7)
- %w Day of the week as a decimal, with 0 being Sunday (range 0 to 6)
- %j Day of the year as a decimal number (range 001 to 366)

### **Week**

- %U Week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Sunday as the first day of the first week
- %W Week number of the current year as a decimal number, starting with the first Monday as the first day of the first week
- %V The ISO 8601:1988 week number of the current year as a decimal number, range 01 to 53, where week 1 is the first week that has at least 4 days in the current year, and with Monday as the first day of the week. (Use %G or %g for the year component that corresponds to the week number for the specified timestamp.)

### **Month**

- %b Abbreviated month name according to the current locale
- %B Full month name according to the current locale
- %m Month as a decimal number (range 01 to 12)

### **Year**

- %C Century number (the year divided by 100 and truncated to an integer, range 00 to 99)
- %G The 4-digit year corresponding to the ISO week number (see %V). This has the same format and value as %Y, except that if the ISO week number belongs to the previous or next year, that year is used instead.



- %g Like %G, but without the century.  
%y Year as a decimal number without a century (range 00 to 99)  
%Y Year as a decimal number including the century

**Time**

- %H Hour as a decimal number using a 24-hour clock (range 00 to 23)  
%I Hour as a decimal number using a 12-hour clock (range 01 to 12)  
%M Minute as a decimal number  
%p Either **am** or **pm** according to the given time value, or the corresponding strings for the current locale  
%r Time in a.m. and p.m. notation  
%R Time in 24 hour notation  
%S Second as a decimal number  
%T Current time, equal to %H:%M:%S

**Notes**

- %c Preferred date and time representation for the current locale  
%x Preferred date representation for the current locale without the time  
%X Preferred time representation for the current locale without the date  
%D Same as %m/%d/%y  
%h Same as %b  
%n Newline character  
%t Tab character  
%Z or %z Time zone or name or abbreviation  
%% A literal % character

---

## ***Change Admin Password tab***

**Overview**

Use this tab to change the password for your administrator (Admin) account.

**Related Topics**

- [Date and Time Features](#)
- [Admin Panels](#)
- [Password](#)

**To Access**

From the [General Admin](#) page, click the **Change Admin Password** tab.

---

# Features Admin

## Overview

Enable or disable Tiki features

## Related Topics

- [Features](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Features** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=features>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)

## Note

In Tiki 2 (and earlier), all options were on a [single tab](#).

---

TikiTeam  
[UserPagejbutler](#)  
[WhiteBoy](#)  
[mdavey](#) - minor edits

---

## Global Features

## Overview

Enables mature, stable end user features

## Related Topics

- [Features](#)
- [Permissions](#)

## To Access

From the [Features](#) page, click the **Global Features** tab.

## Note

After enabling specific permissions, be sure to configure the necessary [permissions](#) so users can use the feature.

In Tiki 2 (and earlier), all options were on a [single tab](#).

## No Tabs

6.x3.x1.10.x1.9.x



Global Preferences tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Main Feature</b>		
Wiki	Enables the <a href="#">Wiki</a> feature for collaborative documents.	Enabled
Blog	Enables the <a href="#">Blog</a> feature for web logs and online journals.	
Forums	Enables the <a href="#">Forums</a> feature for structured, threaded topic.	
Polls	Enables the <a href="#">Polls</a> feature for voting.	
Newsletters	Enables the <a href="#">Newsletter</a> feature for subscription-based email newsletters.	
Category	Enables the <a href="#">Category</a> feature for organizing Tiki objects (such as wiki pages or blogs)	
MySQL Full-Text Search	Enables the <a href="#">Search</a> feature. By default, Tiki uses the MySQL full-text search.	

Setting	Description	Default
File Gallery	Enables the <a href="#">File Gallery</a> feature in which to upload and store files (such as images, documents, videos, and so on).	Enabled
Articles	Enables the <a href="#">Articles</a> feature to create and publish (and expire) news items based on date, topic, or type.	
Trackers	Enables the <a href="#">Trackers</a> feature to create interactive forms or data collection tools.	
Calendar	Enables the <a href="#">Calendar</a> feature to create and display events.	
Banners	Enables the <a href="#">Banners</a> feature to create "zones" in the site in which to display ads, videos, or any other content.	
Freetags	Enables the <a href="#">Freetags</a> feature to allow folksonomy tagging and categorizing.	
<b>Additional</b>		
Surveys	Enables the <a href="#">Surveys</a> feature to create and collect surveys.	
Quizzes	Enables the <a href="#">Quizzes</a> feature	
Maps	Enables the <a href="#">Map</a> feature	
Live Support System	Enables the <a href="#">Live Support</a> System feature	
Share	Enables the <a href="#">Share</a> feature	
Score	Enables the <a href="#">Score</a> feature	
Dynamic Content System	Enables the <a href="#">Dynamic Content</a> System feature to create and manage variables that represent content throughout the site.	
Directory	Enables the Directory feature	
Shoutbox	Enables the <a href="#">Shoutbox</a> feature	
Google Maps	Enables the <a href="#">Google Maps</a> feature	
Tell a Friend	Enables the <a href="#">Tell a Friend</a> feature that allows users to email links of Tiki pages to their friends.	
Minichat	Enables the <a href="#">Minichat</a> feature that allows real-time chatting on the site, via module.	
Full Screen	Enables the <a href="#">Full Screen</a> feature which allows users to view or edit pages <i>without</i> the side columns.	
<b>Watches</b>		
User Watches	Enables the <a href="#">User Watches</a> feature to send notifications to users when specific content changes.	
Daily Reports for User Watches	Enables the Daily Reports for User Watches feature	
User Watches Languages	Enables the User Watches Languages feature	
Group Watches	Enables the <a href="#">Group Watches</a> feature to enable Tiki <a href="#">Groups</a> to watch items.	
User Watches Translations	Enables the User Watches feature	
Group Alert	Enables the <a href="#">Group Alert</a> feature	



Figure 1. The Admin: Features page

Starting with [Tikiwiki 1.10](#), the Admin: Features page has each feature grouped into common sections.

## *Tiki sections and features (1.10)*

[+]

### *Major features*

Features	
Wiki	Blogs
Image Galleries	File Galleries
Articles	Forums
Trackers	Polls
Calendar	Newsletters
Banners	

## Minor features

Minor Features	
<input type="checkbox"/> Links	<input type="checkbox"/> Syntax
<input type="checkbox"/> Comments	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Comments lists	<input type="checkbox"/> Permissions
<input type="checkbox"/> Mail client	<input type="checkbox"/> Content tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Comments section	<input type="checkbox"/> Multimedia
<input type="checkbox"/> Mail client	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> News	<input type="checkbox"/> Search news
<input type="checkbox"/> User comment section	<input type="checkbox"/> Table of content

## Site-wide features

Site-wide Features	
<input type="checkbox"/> Subsites	<input type="checkbox"/> Sites
<input type="checkbox"/> Subsite editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Profiles
<input type="checkbox"/> Search	<input type="checkbox"/> Admin log settings
<input type="checkbox"/> Wiki Syntax (Syntax documentation link)	

## Technical Features

Technical Features	
<input type="checkbox"/> Search engine friendly url	<input type="checkbox"/> Sitemap
<input type="checkbox"/> Mail	<input type="checkbox"/> Backup API
<input type="checkbox"/> Security	<input type="checkbox"/> Newsletter
<input type="checkbox"/> Wiki Syntax (Syntax documentation link)	
<input type="checkbox"/> Wiki Syntax (Syntax documentation link)	

## User interface enhancement features

User interface enhancement features	
<input type="checkbox"/> Search engine friendly url	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables (Syntax documentation link)
<input type="checkbox"/> Mail client	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Comments section	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Mail client	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> News	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> User comment section	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables

## Experimental Features

Experimental Features	
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables

## Content Features

Content Features	
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables

## Administration Features

Administration Features	
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables
<input type="checkbox"/> Tables editor	<input type="checkbox"/> Tables

## User Features



### New features coming along in Tikiwiki 1.10

...	<a href="#">Action log setting</a>
<a href="#">Tags</a>	<a href="#">Intertiki</a>
Morcego 3D Browser	Ajax
Calendar manual selection of time/date	<a href="#">Contribution</a>
<a href="#">Wysiwyg</a>	<a href="#">Propose a Fullscreen mode</a>
Help System	Copyright system
<a href="#">HTML Purifier</a> (Content is cleaned to XHTML 1.1 Strict on each save) ...	

### Tiki sections and features (1.9.x)

<a href="#">Wiki</a>	<a href="#">Blog</a>
<a href="#">Image Gallery</a>	<a href="#">File Gallery</a>
<a href="#">Articles</a>	<a href="#">Forum</a>
<a href="#">FAQ</a>	<a href="#">Shoutbox</a>
<a href="#">Chat</a>	<a href="#">Trackers</a>
<a href="#">Directory</a>	<a href="#">Webmail</a>
<a href="#">Newsreader</a>	<a href="#">Surveys</a>
<a href="#">Polls</a>	<a href="#">Ephemerides</a>
<a href="#">Quiz</a>	<a href="#">Search</a>
<a href="#">Featured links</a>	<a href="#">Banners</a>
<a href="#">Newsletters</a>	<a href="#">Live support system</a>
<a href="#">Mini Calendar</a>	<a href="#">Map</a>
<a href="#">Help System</a>	<a href="#">Multilingual</a>
<a href="#">Category</a>	<a href="#">Best language</a>
Show Category Path	Show Babelfish Translation URLs
Show Category Objects	Show Babelfish Translation Logo
Show Module Controls	<a href="#">Tiki Calendar</a>
<a href="#">Mail-in</a>	<a href="#">Tiki Template Viewing</a>



<a href="#">Integrator</a>	<a href="#">PHP Layers dynamic menus</a>
<a href="#">Js Calendar</a>	<a href="#">Use Tabs</a>
<a href="#">Score</a>	<a href="#">Tiki Sheet</a>
<a href="#">Friendship Network</a>	<a href="#">Site Logo and Identity</a>
<a href="#">Mobile</a>	<a href="#">Intertiki</a>
<a href="#">Google Maps</a>	<a href="#">Trackbacks Pings</a>



Clicking the **Features** icon on the **Admin Panel** (see TikiAdminSettings ) takes you to the **Features** screen, where you can enable or disable Tiki features. See Fig 1.



**Figure 1. A view of the Features Page**

## {VERSIONS}

Use this screen to choose which features will be available in your tiki. Thus, you can tailor Tiki to your specific needs without configuring the entire application. The default installation of Tiki enables very few features.

Remember, when you disable a feature, all the screens and modules related to the feature will produce an error screen if accessed. If you are receiving an error screen when accessing a feature, check this page first.

TikiFeatures provides short descriptions of the main Tiki features. Follow the links below for additional documentation on each of the features you can enable or disable from this screen. *In addition, while viewing the **Administration** screen, you may click any term for help!*

## Content Features



**Figure 2. The Content Features Section**

**Hotwords** If enabled, Wiki pages are parsed and some words are automatically converted to HTML links. E.g., *TVCrit* becomes *http://www.TVCrit.com*. Admins can edit these words from the **Admin Hotwords**

	screen.
Hotwords in New Windows	When enabled clicking a Hotword bring the target page in a new window instead of changing the current page.
Custom Home	If enabled, a customized page will serve as the home page for the Tiki.
Drawings	Enables JGraphPad drawing tool.
Charts	Enables charts for featured links.
Edit templates	Dynamic template editing from within Tiki. Permits the rearrangement of Tiki's headers, footers, and columns.
Edit CSS	Dynamic CSS (Cascading Style Sheet) editing from within Tiki. Permits the changing of Tiki's style (fonts, colors, etc.)
Dynamic Content System	Edit blocks of text or HTML code that can be included in any template or user module.
Allow Smileys	Permit emoticons in forum/blog posts, Wiki pages, etc.

## Administration Features



**Figure 3. The Administration Features section**

Banning system	Ban unruly users.
Stats	Site statistics.
Referer stats	Tracks which sites have referred users to your site.
Theme control	Admin can make sections, categories or individual objects use different themes.
Debugger Console	Analyze the operation of your Tiki.
Communications (send/receive objects)	Users may exchange Tiki objects with each other and admin.
XMLRPC API	The Blogger XMLRPC API, which allows Blogger-compatible applications to manage Tiki blogs. Note that the API is carefully implemented to respect Tiki permissions so it is NOT a security compromise to enable this feature. It is as safe as the rest of the site.
Contact Us	Contact-us feature includes a contact form and an email link that is coded to defeat spammers.

## User Features

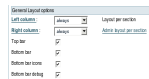


**Figure 4. The User Features section**

These settings apply only to registered users.

User Preferences Screen	A screen where users can set up their preferences--for example, their themes.
User Bookmarks	Users get a personal hyperlink directory.
User Watches	Users can configure the blogs, forums, Wiki pages, etc. that they are monitoring ("watching").
User Tasks	Users get a to-do lists.
User Files	Allows users to upload personal files.
<a href="#">Users can Configure Modules</a>	Users with the right permissions can configure modules to their needs.
<a href="#">Users can Shade Modules</a>	Users can flip between show module title only and show module title+contents
User Menu	Users can create their own menus of Tiki objects.
User Messages	Users can send personal messages between them.
User Notepad	Users can create personal notes.

## General Layout options



**Figure 5. The General Layout Options section**

<a href="#">Left column</a>	Display left column
<a href="#">Right column</a>	Display right column
Top bar	Display the top bar, possibly including site tabs, search, banners, logo and/or login field (depending on theme and preferences)
Bottom bar	Display the bottom bar, possibly including server stats, powered by logos and/or RSS XML links (depending on theme and preferences)
Layout per section	When this is enabled the page layout can be individually configured for different Tiki sections.
Admin layout per section	Access the <b>admin layout</b> screen by clicking the <b>Admin layout per section</b> link.

This part of the features section can be used to control the look and feel (layout) of your Tiki site. Basically, you can enable/disable the columns, the top bar (where the Tiki version is indicated) and the footer. If you want a 1-column layout without changing anything in the code, this is the way to go.

Some users ask if there's a need to display the copyright message for Tiki. The answer is a clear NO. You can use Tiki for whatever you want and you can customize it to look exactly as you want.

Note that you may want to enable the **Layout per section** option. When this is enabled the page layout can be individually configured for different Tiki sections. For example, you may want to remove the right column only in the forums. If so, enable the **layout per section** option and use the **admin layout** screen to select individual layouts for sections. (Access the **admin layout** screen by clicking the **Admin layout per section** link.)

### ***Layout-per-section Options***

You can select an individual layout for the following sections:

- Wiki
- Image galleries
- File galleries
- CMS (Articles)
- Blog
- Forum
- Chat
- Category
- Games
- FAQ
- HTML sages
- Quiz
- Surveys
- Webmail
- Trackers
- Featured links
- Directory
- User messages
- Newsreader
- MyTiki
- WorkFlow
- Charts

Remember to click the **Update** button when you've made changes.

---

## Interface

### Overview

Enables third party package features

### Related Topics

- [Features](#)

### To Access

From the [Features](#) page, click the **Interface** tab.

### Note

In Tiki 2 (and earlier), all options were on a [single tab](#).

### [No Tabs](#) [6.x](#)



Interface tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>AJAX</b>		
Ajax	Enables the Ajax feature	Enabled
Ajax auto-save	If enabled, when editing <a href="#">wiki</a> pages, Tiki will automatically save your work during the edit session. Additionally, Tiki will display a "live preview" of the page.	Enabled
Save draft	Enables the Save draft feature	
Ajax xAjax	If enabled, Tiki will use the xAjax feature	
<b>jQuery plugins and add-ons</b>		
Autocomplete	If enabled, Tiki provides "look ahead" text completion for many text fields. As you type an entry, Tiki will automatically display a list of valid values.	Enabled
Reflection	If enabled, Tiki will add a mirror image (reflection) to the bottom of images.	
Tooltips	Allows "mouse-over" pop-up messages. Use CSS for custom styling.	Enabled
JQuery UI	Includes the jQuery UI library.	Enabled
JQuery Media	Enables the JQuery Media feature	
Superfish	If enabled, Tiki uses the CSS "Superfish" animation effects for menus.	Enabled
JQuery UI Theme	Select the default JQuery UI Theme	Smoothness
Validation	Enables the Validation feature in a Tiki <a href="#">Tracker</a>	
<b>Experimental</b>		
JQuery Infinite Carousel	Enables the JQuery Infinite Carousel feature	
JQuery Sortable Tables	Enables the JQuery Sortable Tables feature	
JQuery JQS5	Enables the JQuery JQS5 feature	

Table of contents:

## Programmer

### Overview

Enables features that are useful to programmers

### Related Topics

- [Features](#)
- [Tiki Development](#)

## To Access

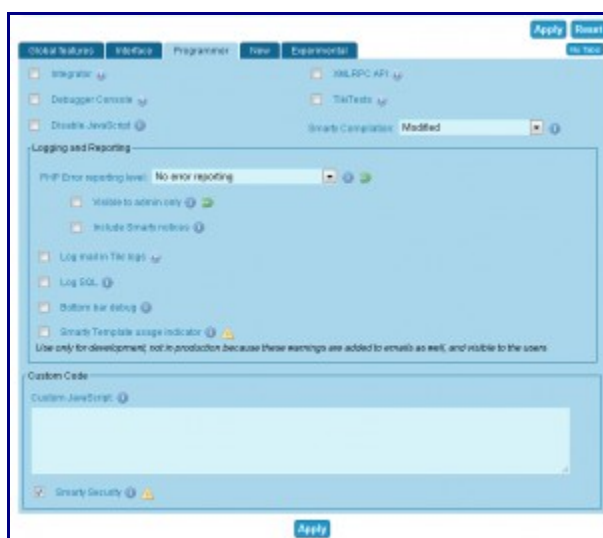
From the [Features](#) page, click the **Programmer** tab.

## Note

In Tiki 2 (and earlier), all options were on a [single tab](#).


## No Tabs

### 6.x



Programmer tab

Setting	Description	Default
Integrator	Enables the Integrator feature	
Debugger Console	Enables the Debugger Console feature	
Disable Javascript	If enabled, all site JavaScript will be disabled, even if allowed by the browser. <b>Caution:</b> Use only for testing or troubleshooting. When enabled, many Tiki features will not operate correctly.	
XMLRPC API	Enables the XMLRPC API	
TikiTests	Enables TikiTests	
Smarty Compilation	Specify the Caching policy for Smarty templates: Modified, Never, or Always.	Modified
<b>Logging and Reporting</b>		

Setting	Description	Default
PHP Error reporting level	Specify how Tiki should report any PHP errors: <b>No reporting</b> , <b>All reporting</b> , or <b>All reporting except notices</b> .	Report all PHP errors except notices
Visible to admin only	If enabled, errors will be shown to only the Admin user.	Disabled
Include Smarty notices	If enabled, Tiki will display Smarty notices, too.	Enabled
Log mail in Tiki logs	If enabled, a line of type <b>mail</b> will be included in the <a href="#">System Log</a> with the destination address and subject of each email sent.	Disabled
Log SQL	If enabled, all SQL queries will be registered in the database in the <b>adodb_logsql</b> table.  Caution: Do not enable this feature all the time. It can be very resource intensive and will impact performance.	Disabled
Log queries using more than	Use to log <i>only</i> queries that use a specific amount of time.	0.05 seconds
Smarty template usage indicator	Enables HTML comments at the beginning and end of each template	
<b>Custom Code</b>		
Custom Javascript	Includes an inline block of custom JavaScript on all pages	JavaScript code
Smarty Security	Disables PHP code in Smarty Templates	

## New

### Overview

Use this tab to enable and configure new Tiki features.

### Related Topics

- [Features](#)
- [Developer Site](#)

### To Access

From the [Features](#) page, click the **New** tab.

### Note



These features are either new or undergoing major changes. Be aware that there may be known issues and limitations. Review the [Bug List](#) for details.



## No Tabs

### 6.x



Setting	Description	Default
BigBlueButton	Enable integration with <a href="#">BigBlueButton</a> for web conferencing and screen sharing. If enabled, you must supply the BBB <b>Server location</b> and <b>Server Salt</b> .	
Kaltura	Enable integration with <a href="#">Kaltura</a> for collaborative video editing.	
Print Indexed	Enable Print Indexed feature	
Search engine friendly url	Tiki will use <a href="#">SEFURL - Search Engine Friendly URLs</a> . This requires the use of the Tiki <b>.htaccess</b> file.	
Webmail	Enable the webmail feature	
Mindmap	Enable the mindmap feature	
Invite Users	Enable the Invite Users feature	
Perspectives	Enable the Perspectives feature	
Quick Permission Assignment	Enable the Quick Permission Assignment feature	
Spreadsheet	Enable the Spreadsheet feature	
WebDAV Access to Tiki	Enable the WebDAV Access feature	
Web Services	Enable the Web Services feature	
Wysiwyg editor	Enable the Wysiwyg editor feature	

## Experimental

### Overview

### Related Topics

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (<http://tiki.org>)

- [Features](#)
- [Experimental](#)

Copyright © by Tiki Software Community Association under a Commons Attribution - ShareAlike License.

Features are shown on this label for a variety of reasons:

- Features that may change or might be re-worked in the future
- Features that need admin help and user patience to work well
- Malfunctioning
- Features that have critical faults - not recommended
- Old features no longer maintained
- A new feature that is intended, if it progresses well, to replace another feature.

## To Access

From the [Features](#) page, click the **Experimental** tab.

## Note

Tiki has more built-in features than any other Open Source Web application we know of. (Other apps tend to have a small "core" and add functionality via add-ons/extensions/etc. This all-in-one model has many benefits. However, like Wikipedia, it means that we must accept varying level of quality. So this doesn't mean all feature are good. It also doesn't mean that features won't be pulled out later on. In the admin panel and on the doc site, we'll tag/identify features that are considered "experimental".

## No Tabs

### 6.x17



Experimental tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Fresh out of the oven</b>		
Tiki User Credits	Enable the Tiki User Credits feature	
Ustream Watershed	Enable the Ustream Watershed feature	
Load Balancer	Enable the Load Balancer feature	
Social Networks	Enable the Social Networks feature	
<b>Seem ok, but...</b>		
Action Log	Enable the Action Log feature	
Contribution	Enable the Contribution feature	
Custom Home	Enable the Custom Home feature	
Intertiki	Enable the Intertiki feature	
Mobile	Enable the Mobile feature	
Communications	Enable the Communications feature to send and receive objects	
Copyright	Enable the Copyright feature	
Friendship Network	Enable the Friendship Network feature	
Mail-in	Enable the Mail-in feature	Value
Morcego 3D browser	Enable the Morcego 3D browser feature	
<b>Will be phased out</b>		
FAQ	Enable the FAQ feature	
HTML pages	Enable the HTML pages feature	
Image Gallery	Enable the Image Gallery feature	

## *Alias*

- [Neglected](#)
- [experimental feature](#)
- [experimental features](#)

# Login Administration page

## Overview

Configure Tiki login, registration, and authentication settings.

## Related Topics

- [OpenID](#)
- [Module Login\\_box?](#)
- [Imap?](#)
- [External Authentication](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Login** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or  
Access **<http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=login>**

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Login General Preferences](#)
- [LDAP authentication](#)
- [PAM authentication](#)
- [Shibboleth Authentication](#)
- [CAS Authentication](#)
- [phpBB Authentication](#)
- [Web Server Authentication](#)

---

## General Preferences

## Overview

Use this tab to configure your user registration and site security features.

## Related Topics

- [External Authentication](#)

## To Access

From the [Login Config](#) page, click the **General Preferences** tab.

## No Tabs 6.x2.x1.9.x

General Preferences: **Tab** | LWP | File | Database | CSS | Image | Web Server | [Change preferences](#)

Authentication method: **Tab**

Registration & Log in

☒ Users can register

☒ Validate how user registers by email

☐ Validate user's email server

☐ Require validation by Admin

☐ Require password to register

☐ Include "Generate Password" option on registration form

Users can select a group to join at registration.  
By default, new users automatically join the Registered group.

Registered:  
Admins

URL a user is redirected to after account validation:  
Default: <http://tikiwiki.org/tiki/validateAccount>  
You need to set: Users can register

☐ Use tracker to collect more user information  
Use the "Status Groups" page to select which tracker and fields to display.  
You need to set: Trackers

☐ Use tracker to collect more group information  
Use the "Status Groups" page to select which tracker and fields to display.  
You need to set: Trackers

Re-validate user by email after: 1 days  
Use "1" for never

Re-validate user by email after: 28 unsuccessful login attempts  
Use "1" for never

☐ Create a new group for each user  
The group will be named identical to the user's username.

☐ Disable browser's autocomplete feature for username and password fields.

☐ Use challenge/response authentication.  
Confirm that the Admin account has a valid email address or you will not be permitted to login.

Use HTTPD login: Disabled

Remember me: Disabled

Cookie name: tikiwiki

Domain: localhost

Path: /tikiwiki/

☐ Banning system

Username

☐ Use email as username

☒ Obsolete email when using email as username if possible (password will not be complete)

You need to set: Use email as username

Minimum length: 1

Maximum length: 50

☐ Force lowercase

Username pattern: [a-zA-Z0-9@\_~]

Password

☒ Remember/forget password

Encryption method: cryptmd5

☒ Users can change their password

☐ Require characters and numerals

Minimum length: 5

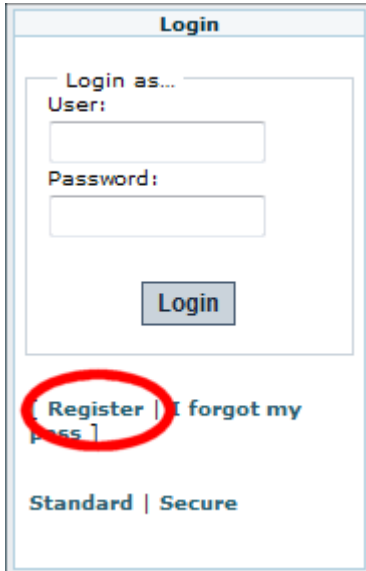
Password expires after: 1 days  
Use "1" for never

Assign users to group function of email pattern

[Change preferences](#)

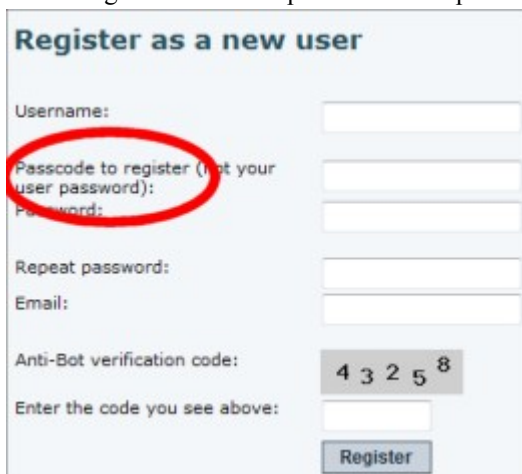
General Preferences tab.

In this section of the admin panel you can setup several settings for your user registration and site security features. The settings are the following ones:

Setting	Description
Authentication method:	<p>Tiki supports several different methods of user authentication. Choose between:</p> <p><b>Just Tiki:</b> Tiki will use its internal user database</p> <p><b>Web Server:</b> Tiki will use your web server's authentication</p> <p><b>Tiki and Pear:</b> Tiki will use both its internal user database and <a href="#">Pear::Auth</a>, which will allow <a href="#">LDAP</a> authentication.</p> <p><a href="#">Tiki and PAM</a></p> <p><a href="#">CAS</a></p> <p><a href="#">Shibboleth</a></p> <p><a href="#">OpenID and Tiki</a> (introduced in 2.0)</p> <p>The <a href="#">External Authentication</a> page has details on each of these methods.</p> <p>If enabled, this will allow users to register, using the webform. The <a href="#">Login module</a> will include a <b>Register</b> link. If disabled, the admin will have to create new users manually on the <a href="#">Admin Users</a> page.</p>
Users can register:	 <p>Login module with Register link.</p>
but need Admin validation:	<p>If enabled, each user registration must be validated by the administrator. After a new user completes the reregistration form, a validation request will be sent to the administrator (defined by the <b>Sender email</b> field on the <a href="#">General Admin</a> page. The administrator must validate the user before the user can login.</p> <p>See the <a href="#">Configuring User Validation</a> page for details on this procedure.</p>
Create a group for each user	<p>If enabled, Tiki will automatically create a <a href="#">group</a> for the user. The group name will be the same as the user name.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Groups Management</a> for more information on using groups.</p>

Setting	Description
Use tracker for more user information	<p>If enabled, Tiki will display a <a href="#">tracker form</a> for the user to complete, as part of the registration process. Use this tracker to store additional information about each user.</p> <p>See <a href="#">User Tracker</a> for details.</p>
Use tracker for more group information:	<p>Use a tracker to store additional information about each group. See <a href="#">Group Tracker</a> for details.</p> <p>If enabled, the user must enter a passcode before they can register. You can create any alphanumeric passcode. You will have to inform users of this passcode before they can register. This can be used in sites where users are <i>invited</i> or they receive a passcode after paying a fee or something like that. Semi-private or semi-public sites may enjoy this feature.</p>

#### Request passcode to register:

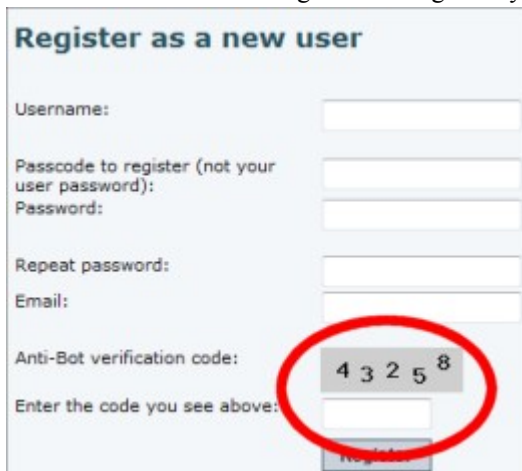


Register with Passcode.

If enabled, Tiki will display a CAPTCHA on the registration form to prevent spambots from registering.

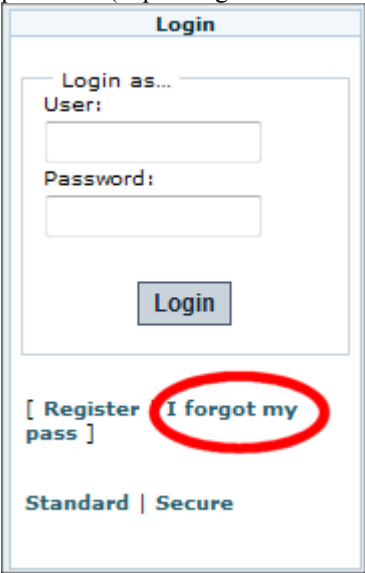
You must have the GD Image Processing library installed on your server.

#### Prevent automatic/robot registration:



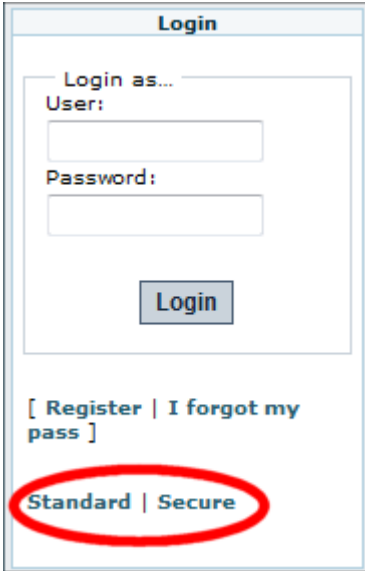
Register with Antibot code

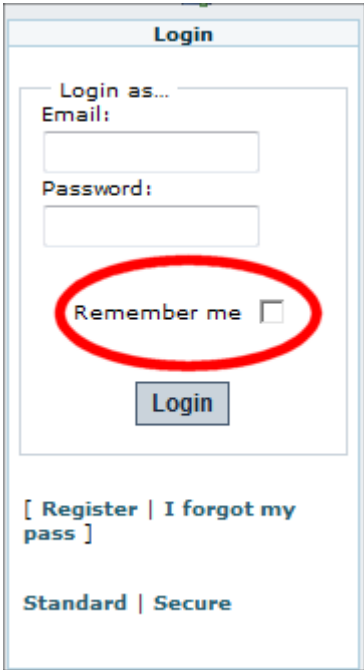
**Use login as email:** If enabled, the user's email address will be used as their login. On the registration form, there

Setting	Description
	<p>will be no <b>Username</b> field.</p> <div> <input type="text"/> </div> <p>Register with Email as Login.</p> <p>If enabled, Tiki will send an email message to the user. The message contains a link that must be clicked to validate the registration. After clicking the link, the user will be validated. You can use this option to limit false registrations or fake email addresses .</p> <p><b>Note:</b> Your Tiki must have access to the php (@mail) function. to send the registration email.</p>
<b>Validate users by emails:</b>	<p>If enabled, Tiki will attempt to validate the user's email address by examining the syntax of the email address. It must be a string of letters, or digits or _ or . or - follows by a @ follows by a string of letters, or digits or _ or . or -. Tiki will perform a DNS lookup and attempt to open a SMTP session to validate the email server.</p>
<b>Validate users email server:</b>	<p>Note: Some web servers may disable this functionality, thereby disabling this feature. If you are not in in a high security site or if you are on an open users site, do not use this option.</p> <p>If enabled, the <b>I forgot my password</b> will be displayed in the <a href="#">Login module</a>. If a user forgets their password or username, they can reset their account by entering either their username or email address. Tiki will send the user an email with their email or instructions on resetting their password (depending on the setting of the <b>Store plaintext passwords</b> setting).</p>
<b>Remind passwords by email:</b>	<div>  </div>
<b>Store plaintext passwords</b>	<p>If enabled, the email generated by the <b>Remind passwords by email</b> setting will include the user's password in plaintext. If disabled, the email will include a link that will allow the user to select a new password.</p>
<b>Crypt password method</b>	<p>Specify how Tiki encrypts passwords in the database.</p>
<b>Registered Users can change password.:</b>	<p>If this is enabled, registered users can change their password from their <a href="#">User Preferences</a> page. If not, passwords can be changed only by the admin.</p>
<b>Reg users can change</b>	<p>If enabled, registered users can select their own theme from their <a href="#">User Preferences</a> page. Click</p>



Setting	Description
<b>theme</b>	on <b>Restrict Available Themes</b> to select the themes you want to make available to the user.  Note: Tiki determines the available themes by the .CSS files in your ../styles directory.
<b>Reg users can change language</b>	If enabled, registered users can select their own interface language from their <a href="#">User Preferences</a> page. Click on <b>Restrict Available Languages</b> to select the themes you want to make available to the user.  Note: Tiki determines the available languages by the .PHP files in your ../lang directory.
<b>Minimum and Maximum username length:</b>	The minimum (default = 1) and maximum (default = 50) number of characters for a valid username.
<b>Force lowercase username:</b>	If enabled, Tiki will automatically convert all alphabetic characters in the username to all lowercase letters. For example <b>JohnDoe</b> becomes <b>johndoe</b> .  See <a href="#">Case in Usernames?</a> for a discussion of case in the various versions of Tiki.
<b>Use challenge-response authentication</b>	If enabled and the user's browser supports JavaScript , passwords ARE NOT SENT across the network. Instead, a challenge response algorithm is used. Tiki generates a challenge code and the browser sends a response based on the challenge that Tiki verifies to login the user. Challenge responses cannot be reused. This method, if enabled, strongly enforces the security of your user passwords. If you use this option, you don't need an HTTPs connection for extra security. <b>The drawback</b> to this method is that users will have to enter their email address every time they login — three boxes to fill in not two.
<b>Force to use chars and numbers in passwords:</b>	If enabled, Tiki will require user passwords to contain both letters and numbers. Use this option to force users to select stronger passwords.
<b>Minimum Password Length:</b>	Select the minimum number of characters for user passwords. The default <b>1</b> . Increase this option to force users to select stronger passwords.
<b>Password Invalid after days:</b>	The number of days after which a password will expire. Days are counted starting with the user's first login. When the password expires, users will be forced to select a new password when logging in.  Note: In version 1.9.8.3, use <b>999</b> to never expire. In version 2.0 use <b>-1</b> to never expire.
<b>Re-validate users by email after days:</b>	The number of days after which an email will be sent to the user with a link to revalidate the account. The user will not be able to login (that is, the account will be invalid), until the user clicks the link. Use this feature to verify that a user's email is still valid. Use <b>-1</b> to never re-validate users.  This feature was introduced in release 2.0.
<b>Re-validate user by email after unsuccessful logins:</b>	The number of unsuccessful login attempts after which Tiki will "lock" the account and attempt to re-validate the user by email. Use this feature to protect user accounts against brute-force attacks. Use <b>-1</b> to disable this feature.  This feature was introduced in release 2.0
<b>Generate a password option:</b>	If enabled, Tiki will include a button on the registration form that will automatically generate a very secure password for the user.

Setting	Description
	length.  This feature was introduced in 2.0. In earlier versions, the <b>Generate</b> button was always displayed on the registration form.  Specify if Tiki supports secure (HTTPS) logins. Choose between: <b>Disabled</b> <b>Allow</b> <b>Encourage</b> <b>Consider always</b> <b>Require</b>  If enabled, the <a href="#">Login module</a> will include links for <b>Secure</b> or <b>Standard</b> login.
HTTPS Login:	 <p>Login module with HTTPS.</p>
HTTP Port and URL:	If HTTPS is enabled, include the URL and port for your HTTPS server. For example, if you access your site as <a href="http://tikiwiki.org:2038">http://tikiwiki.org:2038</a> , enter the port here.
Remember me feature:	Use this option to have Tiki remember users. They will automatically be logged in if they leave, then return to the site. Choose between: <b>Disabled</b> <b>User's choice</b> <b>Always</b>  You can define the duration (length of time) that Tiki will "remember" the user. If "User's Choice" the <a href="#">Login module</a> will include a "Remember me" checkbox.

Setting	Description
	 <p>Login module with Remember me.</p>
<b>Remember me name:</b>	Filename of the cookie placed on users computer. Example: yourdomain
<b>Remember me domain:</b>	Domain name for the Tiki site. Example: .yourdomain.com
<b>Remember me path:</b>	Path to your TikiWiki installation, if not in root directory. The path is appended to the domain. Example: /
<b>Protect against CSRF with a confirmation step:</b>	Enable this option to protect your site against Cross Site scripting (CSRF), a common method of hacking a site. If Tiki detects a possible CSRF attack, a confirmation prompt will be displayed to verify that the action is valid.
<b>Protect against CSRF with a ticket:</b>	<i>What is this setting used for?</i>
<b>Highlight Group:</b>	<a href="#">Help</a> <i>What is this setting used for?</i>
<b>User can choose their group at registration time:</b>	Use this feature to allow a new user to select a <a href="#">group</a> to join, as part of the registration process. The groups you select here will be displayed on the registration form. This feature was introduced in release 2.0
<b>Display user's contribution in the user page:</b>	If enabled, the user's User Information page will display a list of all objects (such as wiki pages, image galleries, etc.) that the user has edited.
<b>Display Tracker Information on User page:</b>	If enabled, displays UserTracker informations in user information page. Format: trackerId,fieldId1,fieldId2,...:
<b>Deactivate login autocomplete</b>	Use to deactivate the autocomplete in the login box. The autocomplete features can be optionally set in the user's browser to remember the form input and proposes the remember the password. If enabled, the user login and password can not be remembered. You should enable this feature for

Setting	Description
	highly secure sites.
	This feature was introduced in release 2.0.
<b>On permission denied, display login box:</b>	If an anonymous visitor attempts to display a page that they do not have permission to view, Tiki will display the <a href="#">Login module</a> . This allows the visitor to login, then display the page.
	This feature was introduced in release 2.0.
<b>On permission denied, send to this URL:</b>	If a user attempts to display a page that they do not have permission to view, Tiki will forward the user to the specified URL.
	This feature was introduced in release 2.0.

## Administration: Login

User registration, login and authentication



**Admin Groups** **Admin Users**

### User registration and login

Authentication method: Just Tiki 

Users can register: ☒

... but need admin validation: ☐

Create a group for each user (with the same name as the user): ☐

Use tracker for more user information: ☐

Use tracker for more group information: ☐

Request passcode to register: ☐ cced991b0e27c07aa0\*

Prevent automatic/robot registration: ☒

Use login as email: ☐

Validate users by email: ☐

Validate user email server: ☐

Remind passwords by email (if "Store plaintext passwords" is activated.)  
Else, Reset passwords by email: ☒

Store plaintext passwords: ☐

Crypt passwords method: crypt-md5 

Reg users can change password: ☒

Reg users can change theme: ☐ [Restrict available themes](#)

Reg users can change language: ☒ [Restrict available languages](#)

Minimum username length: 1

Maximum username length: 50

Force lowercase username: ☐

Use challenge/response authentication: ☐

Force to use chars and nums in passwords: ☐


Minimum password length: 1

Password invalid after days: -1  -1 for never

Re-validate user by email after days: -1  -1 for never

Re-validate user by email after unsuccessful logins: 20  -1 for never

Generate a password option: ☐

HTTPS login: Allow secure (https) login 

Users can choose to stay in SSL mode after an HTTPS login: ☒

Users can switch between secured or standard mode at login: ☒

HTTP port: 81

HTTPS port:

Administration: Login (2.0)  
}

User registration and login	
Authentication method	Just Tiki <input type="button" value="v"/>
Users can register:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
... but need admin validation:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <a href="#">User Messages</a> must be turned on and notification is sent to the admin's <a href="#">inter-user message inbox</a>
Create a group for each user (with the same name as the user):	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use tracker for more user information:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use tracker for more group information:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Request passcode to register:	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="text"/>
Prevent automatic/robot registration:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Validate users by email:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Validate email address (may not work):	<input type="checkbox"/>
Users can opt-out internal messages:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Users accept internal messages by default:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Remind passwords by email (if "Store plaintext passwords" is activated.) Else, Reset passwords by email:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Store plaintext passwords:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Reg. users can change password:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Reg. users can change theme:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <a href="#">Restrict available themes</a>
Reg. users can change language:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <a href="#">Restrict available languages</a>
Maximum mailbox size (messages, 0=unlimited):	<input type="text" value="0"/>
Maximum mail archive size (messages, 0=unlimited):	<input type="text" value="200"/>
Maximum sent box size (messages, 0=unlimited):	<input type="text" value="200"/>
Use challenge/response authentication:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Force to use chars and nums in passwords:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Minimum password length:	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Password invalid after days:	<input type="text" value="999"/>
Allow secure (https) login:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Require secure (https) login:	<input type="checkbox"/>
HTTP server name:	<input type="text"/>
HTTP port:	<input type="text" value="80"/>
HTTP URL prefix:	<input type="text" value="/"/>
HTTPS server name:	<input type="text"/>
HTTPS port:	<input type="text" value="443"/>

## Administration: Login (1.9)

*Case Sensitivity*

- Starting with Release 2.0, the login (username) is case *insensitive*. Users can complete the Login module or Forgot Password screen using any case. After logging in, the user's login (username) is shown in its original case.
- In earlier releases, the login (username) is case *sensitive*.
- For backwards compatibility, if two users have identical logins with different cases, they must always log in using their *case sensitive* login.
- The **password** is *always* case sensitive.

*Remember Me*

- When enabled, you can manage the amount of time that the system "remembers" a user, keeping the user logged in. Without a **rememberme** cookie, the session finishes when the php session end. A session can finish because the idle time has been reached or the user closes their browser (or tab in the browser, depending on the browser).
- The session length is set by the **session.gc\_maxlifetime** setting in the **php.ini** file. If allowed by your host, you can overwrite this by using the **Session Lifetime in Minutes** field. Be careful: Sometimes other application running on the same server can redefine the session length and if your session saves the session files in the same place than tikiwiki, you can have interference)
- With a remember me cookie, you can extend the time the system remembers a user (if the user allows cookies and does not limit the cookie to the session time). This time is set in admin->login. When a user checks remember me checkbox, the browser creates a cookie with a name beginning with 'tiki-user-' followed by the rememberme name you gave in admin->login.
- The rememberme feature allows you also to be able to close the browser and to be still logged in when you reopen the browser (if the timeout is not reached)
- In Release 2.0, this cookie is secure. The value does not contain the username or password. The value is a value saved in the database that is matched to find out the user name when the php session has expired. The cookie is deleted when you log-out. In tikiwiki >= 1.10, the remember me can be always activated (admin->login)
- If the user changes their IP or browser, the Remember Me feature will fail.



## ***Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity***

You can change in .htaccess (or php.ini) the paramters: session.gc\_maxlifetime, session.gc\_probability and session.gc\_divisor

## ***CustomFields***

A rudimentary capability exists to add additional text fields to the User Preferences page. This might be used for fields like:

- ))Home\_Phone((
- AIM (or other IM handles)
- Address
- ))Professional\_Certs((

In order to add a new field, you must insert a record into the tiki\_user\_preferences table manually (via phpMyadmin or...). Use a command similar to the following:

```
insert into tiki_user_preferences values('CustomFields','Home_Phone',NULL);
```

The values of the 3 fields are:

1. must be 'CustomFields'
2. descriptive label - this is what shows on screen as the field label
3. default value - NULL means no default, a string here will put that value in the field for the user to edit.

Limits

1. At this time, there is no web page to create the actual field definitions, you must use the SQL statement shown above.
2. No spaces are allowed in the label, an underscore can be used instead.
3. There is no support for anything other than plain text fields
4. Possible security issue - if a user registers with the name 'CustomFields', they could possibly change the default values, or cause other problems. Possible workaround - create your own user with that name and don't use it for anything.
5. The created fields are informational only, they don't hook into anything useful inside Tiki.

---

## ***LDAP Authentication tab***

Related Topics

### **Overview**

- [Support forum](#)
- [Bug reports and feature requests](#)

Tiki can authenticate users using a LDAP server

## To Access

From the [Login Admin](#) page, click the **LDAP** tab.

## No Tabs

## 6.x4.x3.x

**Login**

General Preferences | **LDAP** | FPM | Distribution | CAC | LDAP | New Server

**LDAP**

☐ You must change the Authentication Method to LDAP for these changes to take effect

☐ Create user if not in Tiki

☐ Create user if not in LDAP

☒ Use Tiki authentication for Admin login

☐ Use Tiki authentication for users created in tiki

**LDAP Bind settings**

Host:

Port:

☐ View LDAP debug information in Tiki Logs

☐ Use SSL (Start)

☐ Use TLS

LDAP Bind Type:

Search scope:

LDAP version:

Base DN:

**LDAP User**

User DN:

User attribute:

User OC:

Firstname attribute:

Country attribute:

E-mail attribute:

**LDAP Group**

Group DN:

Group attribute:

Group description attribute:

Group OC:

**LDAP Group Member** - if group membership can be found in group attributes

Member attribute:

☒ Member is DN

**LDAP User Group** - if group membership can be found in user attributes

Group attribute:

Group attribute in group entry:

(Leave this empty if the group name is already given in the user attribute)

**LDAP Admin**

Admin user:

Admin password:

[Change preferences](#)

## LDAP tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>LDAP</b>		
Create user if not in Tiki	If a user was authenticated via LDAP, but not found in the Tiki user database, Tiki will create an entry in its user database if this option is checked. <b>If this option is disabled, this user wouldn't be able to log in</b>	
Create user if not in LDAP	If a user was authenticated by Tiki's user database, but not found on the LDAP server, Tiki will create an LDAP entry for this user. <b>As of time of writing, this is not yet implemented</b> , and this option will probably no more offered in future.	
Use Tiki authentication for Admin login	If this option is set, the user "admin" will be authenticated by only using Tiki's user database and not via LDAP. This option has no effect on users other than "admin".	Enabled
Use Tiki authentication for users created in tiki	If this option is set, users that are created using Tiki are not authenticated via LDAP	
<b>LDAP Bind</b>		
Host:	The hostnames, ip addresses or URIs of your LDAP servers. Separate multiple entries with Whitespace or ','. If you use URIs, then the settings for Port number and SSL are ignored. <b>Example: "localhost ldaps://master.ldap.mydomain.org:63636"</b> will try to connect to localhost unencrypted and if it fails it will try the master LDAP server at a special port with SSL.	
Port:	The port number your LDAP server uses (389 is the default, 636 if you check SSL).	
Write LDAP debug Information in Tiki Logs	Write debug information to tiki logs. <b>Note:</b> Do <i>not</i> enable this option for production sites.	
Use SSL (ldaps)		
Use TLS		
LDAP Bind Type:		Default Anonymous Bind
Search scope:	Search scope (base = Base object search, one = one-level search, sub = Subtree search (default) ) used after authentication for getting user and group information	Subtree
LDAP version:		3
Base DN:		LDAP User
User DN:		
User attribute:		uid
User OC:		inetOrgPerson
Realname attribute:		displayName

Setting	Description	Default
Country attribute:		
E-mail attribute:		
Group DN:		LDAP Group
Group attribute:		cn
Group description attribute		:
Group OC:		groupOfUniqueNames
<b>LDAP Group Member</b>	if group membership can be found in group attributes	
Member attribute:		uniqueMember
Member is DN		Enabled
<b>LDAP User Group</b>	if group membership can be found in user attributes	
Group attribute:		
Group attribute in group entry:	(Leave this empty if the group name is already given in the user attribute)	
<b>LDAP Admin</b>		
Admin user:		
Admin password:		

## LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4

### Changes

The LDAP Authentication part has been rewritten in [Tiki4](#). Tiki no more uses PEARs Auth due to the lack of flexibility and missing features - PEARs Auth is not intended to be able to fetch any other LDAP entries than the user entry. Now it uses PEAR LDAP2.

List of changes:

- The words "PEAR Auth" and "Auth" have been replaced by "LDAP" in code and web front-end
- A proxy user (LDAP admin) is no more needed to authenticate

- You can add more redundant LDAP servers in your configuration
- The use of SSL or TLS is supported now (needs some more testing)
- You can specify the type of LDAP Server (Active Directory, OpenLDAP, ...)
- User and Group information can be replicated to Tiki on every user login. Therefore you can reuse data already present in your LDAP directory.
- Users replicated from LDAP have now disabled Tiki passwords to avoid having ghost users in Tiki that are deleted in LDAP.

## Settings

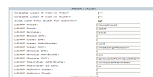
Create user if not in Tiki?	If a user was authenticated via LDAP, but not found in the Tiki user database, Tiki will create an entry in its user database if this option is checked. <b>If this option is disabled, this user wouldn't be able to log in</b>
Create user if not in LDAP?	If a user was authenticated by Tiki's user database, but not found on the LDAP server, Tiki will create an LDAP entry for this user. <b>As of time of writing, this is not yet implemented</b> , and this option will probably no more offered in future.
Use Tiki authentication for Admin login	If this option is set, the user "admin" will be authenticated by only using Tiki's user database and not via LDAP. This option has no effect on users other than "admin".
Use Tiki authentication for users created in Tiki	If this option is set, users that are created using Tiki are not authenticated via LDAP
Hosts	The hostnames, ip addresses or URIs of your LDAP servers. Separate multiple entries with Whitespace or ','. If you use URIs, then the settings for Port number and SSL are ignored. <b>Example: "localhost ldaps://master.ldap.mydomain.org:63636"</b> will try to connect to localhost unencrypted and if it fails it will try the master LDAP server at a special port with SSL.
Port	The port number your LDAP server uses (389 is the default, 636 if you check SSL).
Write LDAP debug Information in Tiki Logs	Write debug information to tiki logs. <b>For production sites uncheck this!</b>
LDAP Bind Type	Here you can control how your bind DN is constructed.
Search Scope	Search scope (base = Base object search, one = one-level search, sub = Subtree search (default) ) used after authentication for getting user and group information
LDAP Version	Usually 3
Base DN	Base DN of the LDAP server. Gets appended to bind DN, user DN and group DN. Example: <b>dc=my-company,dc=com</b>
User DN	RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example: <b>ou=People,dc=my-company,dc=com</b>
User attribute	Attribute that contains the username. (Note: for Active Directory try UserAttribute: sAMAccountName)
User OC	Object class an entry must have when searching for a user. This is mandatory ! If you dont know what to fill in, use * ( <b>an asterix</b> )

Realname attribute	Attribute that holds the real name of the user.
Country attribute	Attribute that holds the country information of the user.
E-mail attribute	Attribute that holds the email of the user.
Group DN	RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example: <b>ou=Groups</b> will search in <b>ou=Groups,dc=my-company,dc=com</b>
Group Attribute	Attribute that contains the group name. Example <b>cn</b>
Group Description Attribute	Attribute that contains the group description
Group OC	Objectclass used to create groups. Example <b>groupOfUniqueNames</b> would result in a group search using the filter (objectclass=groupOfUniqueNames)
Member Attribute	Attribute used to retrieve group members. Example <b>uniqueMember</b> will result in retrieval of all uniqueMembers from a groupOfUniqueNames
Member Is DN	Defines whether member attribute retrieved using LDAP Member Attribute is full DN (y/n)
Group attribute in user entry	If the members of a group cannot be found in the group entry, then use this attribute in the users entry to get group information. Example: gidNumber
Group attribute in group entry	Usually empty. Used to search the group entries. Usually the same like the line above - and then you can leave the field empty.
LDAP Admin User	DN of the entry to use to bind to the LDAP server for user creation. While authentication works without binding as a privileged DN, creation of an entry usually does not. This admin DN is only used when creating user entries on the LDAP server (i.e. only if the option <b>Create user if not in Auth</b> is checked). Authentication works without an admin DN.
LDAP Admin Pwd	Password for the above DN.

## LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X

### LDAP Pear::Auth General Settings Overview

Tiki can authenticate users using a LDAP server via Pear::Auth (see <http://pear.php.net/package-info.php?package=Auth>) . The following settings only make sense, if you have set "Authentication method" to " Tiki/Pear::Auth " in the above dialog. Tiki then uses the LDAP server in addition to its own user database (users\_users) to authenticate users. Your Php must have ldap support on (debian: php4-ldap, php5-ldap, ....)





Create user if not in Tiki?	If a user was authenticated via LDAP, but not found in the Tiki user database, Tiki will create an entry in its user database if this option is checked. <b>If this option is disabled, this user wouldn't be able to log in</b>
Create user if not in Auth?	If a user was authenticated by Tiki's user database, but not found on the LDAP server, Tiki will create an LDAP entry for this user. See Pear::Auth on how an entry is created.
Just use tiki auth for admin?	If this option is set, the user "admin" will be authenticated by only using Tiki's user database and not via LDAP. This option has no effect on users other than "admin".
LDAP Host	The hostname or ip address of you LDAP server (usually localhost).
LDAP Port	The port number your LDAP server uses (389 is the default).
LDAP Scope	Search scope (base = Base object search, one = one-level search, sub = Subtree search (default) ) used during authentication for finding a user on the LDAP server.
LDAP Base DN	Base DN of the LDAP server. If you leave this empty, Pear::Auth will try to query your LDAP server for its base DN. Example: <b>dc=my-company,dc=com</b>
LDAP User DN	RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example: <b>ou=People</b> will search in <b>ou=People,dc=my-company,dc=com</b>
LDAP User attribute	Attribute that contains the username. (Note: for Active Directory try UserAttribute: sAMAccountName)
LDAP User OC	Object class an entry must have when searching for a user. This is mandatory ! If you dont know what to fill in, use * ( <b>an asterix</b> )
LDAP Group DN	RDN to prepend to the base DN when searching for a user. Example: <b>ou=Groups</b> will search in <b>ou=Groups,dc=my-company,dc=com</b>
LDAP Group Attribute	Attribute that contains the group name. Example <b>cn</b>
LDAP Group OC	Objectclass used to create groups. Example <b>groupOfUniqueNames</b> would result in a group search usinf the filter (objectclass=groupOfUniqueNames)
LDAP Member Attribute	Attribute used to retrieve group members. Example <b>uniqueMember</b> will result in retrieval of all uniqueMembers from a groupOfUniqueNames
LDAP Member Is DN	Defines whether member attribute retrieved using LDAP Member Attribute is full DN (y/n)
LDAP Admin User	DN of the entry to use to bind to the LDAP server for user creation. While authentication works without binding as a privileged DN, creation of an entry usually does not. This admin DN is only used when creating user entries on the LDAP server (i.e. only if the option <b>Create user if not in Auth</b> is checked). Authentication works without an admin DN ( Pear::Auth will try to bind using the username/password to authenticate). Note: When using Active Directory as the LDAP server, you usually have to specify an Admin user/PW. This is due to AD's default restriction that doesn't allow anonymous searches. In this case the user does <b>not</b> need to be an administrative user. A regular user account will suffice.
LDAP	Password for the above DN.

Admin Pwd

LDAP  
Version      Usually 3

The **LDAP Group** and **LDAP Member** settings are currently not used by Tiki (as of 1.10 rc).

If your admin page does not contain all the fields listed above, reference [LDAPUseInPriorVersions](#) for information on how to modify versions of Tiki prior to 1.9.8 to use LDAP.

### ***How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use***

- Active Directory bind method will build a RDN like [username@domain.com](#)username at domain.com where your basedn is (dc=domain, dc=com) and username is your username
- Plain bind method will build a RDN username
- Full bind method will build a RDN like userattr=username, userdn, basedn where userattr is replaced with the value you put in 'User attribute', userdn with the value you put in 'User DN', basedn with the value with the value you put in 'base DN'
- Openldap bind method will build a RDN like cn=username, basedn
- anonymous bind method will build an empty RDN

If you do not know, the best is to use a tool to access the directory like Apache Directory Studio

If you can enter your directory with your email, it is probably an Active Directory

If you can access with your username, it can be plain, full, or openldap

After with your tool navigate to select a user, the DN of the user will be shown and you will be able to guess the method

Some tips:

- You can not build a RDN/DN like this "sAMAccountName=username,dc=domain,dc=com". If you would like to do so because the CN is the real name and not the username, it is probably because you have choosen the wrong bind method (it can be an active directory method)
- Use always he search scope subtree at the beginning - as soon as you are sure of your parameters use antoher method for performance

### ***How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki***

Tiki builds another DN to get the attributes. This time, Tiki uses a search and not a bind. The DN is userattr=username, userdn, basedn where userattr is the attribute you put in 'User Attribute', username is the username, userdn the value you put in 'User DN' and basedn is the value you put in basedn. This



time you can use sAMAccountName in the attribute (it is a search not a bind).  
Then put the attribute name you see in the DN taht contains the mail

## *Examples*

### *Unix*

These settings should work on most Unix systems that use LDAP for authentication and as information store:

LDAP Bind Type	Default
Base DN	dc=yourdomain,dc=tld
User DN	ou=users
User attribute	uid
User OC	inetOrgPerson
Realname attribute	cn
E-Mail attribute	mail
Group DN	ou=usergroups
Group attribute	cn
Group OC	groupOfNames
Member attribute	member
Member is DN	yes

### *Active Directory*

LDAP Bind Type	Active Directory
Base DN	dc=yourdomain,dc=tld
User DN	cn=users
User attribute	sAMAccountName
User OC	user
Realname attribute	displayName
E-Mail attribute	probably userPrincipalName - not sure if you use exchange
Group DN	
Group attribute	cn
Group OC	group
Member attribute	member
Member is DN	yes

## ***Zimbra LDAP***

LDAP Bind Type	Default
Base DN	dc=domain,dc=com
User DN	ou=people
User attribute	uid
User OC	*
Realname attribute	displayName
E-mail attribute	mail
Further Instructions	<a href="http://wiki.zimbra.com">http://wiki.zimbra.com</a>

## ***Debugging***

Check the box at "Write LDAP debug Information in Tiki Logs:" and try to authenticate in another browser. Check Tiki Logs (tiki-syslog.php) to see what went wrong.

**ATTENTION:** Uncheck the debug settings once you managed to set up your connection. Your logs will get flooded else!

If this even does not help, you can use this code to check whats wrong:

ldap connect test

```
<?php
$con = ldap_connect('ldap://my_hostname:389');
ldap_set_option(NULL, LDAP_OPT_DEBUG_LEVEL, 7);
ldap_set_option($con, LDAP_OPT_PROTOCOL_VERSION, 3);
ldap_set_option($con, LDAP_OPT_REFERRALS, false);
$dn = 'cn=username,dc=domain,dc=tld';
if(ldap_bind($con, $dn, 'verrry_secret')) {
    echo "connec succeeded";
    //and if you want to test the mail
    $filter = '(objectClass=*)';
    $just = array('mail'); // adapt the attribute name
    $sr = ldap_search($con, $dn, $filter, $just);
    $info = ldap_get_entries($con, $sr);
    print_r($info);
} else {
    echo "Oops!";
}
?>
```

Replace Hostname, Port, binddn and password and run it with  
php connect.php

Present the output your LDAP Administrator.

Useful tool: Apache Directory studio

## ***Common Problems and Workarounds***

### ***Certificate Problems***

If you use certificates on LDAP server side where the root certificate is not trusted, you should put the root or CA certificate somewhere at your tiki webserver and let /etc/openldap/ldap.conf know where it is. Use parameters TLS\_CACERTDIR and TLS\_CACERT to point it to the root or CA certificate.

If you use self signed certificates you can also simply disable certificate checking by setting TLS\_REQCERT to "never" in /etc/openldap/ldap.conf.

See the manpage of "ldap.conf" to get more information.

### ***How it works***

If a user enters his username and password in Tiki, a binddn is created and together with the password used to authenticate the user at the LDAP server. Once authenticated the user is allowed to read data from the LDAP server. Especially he usually can read his own data and the LDAP group information. These data are used to create the user and group in Tiki. The user has the Tiki password disabled. He only can login via LDAP. On subsequent logins, the data are synchronized from LDAP to Tiki (**not the other direction!**).

The replicated data can be at the moment:

- Users full name
- Users email address
- Users country information
- Users group membership
- Group name and description

So if you change any of the above information in LDAP, the data are synchronized the next time the user logs into Tiki. You can even change group membership in LDAP and it gets synchronized to Tiki.

What is not replicated to Tiki are object (user/group) deletions.

### ***Group membership and permissions***

One useful use of LDAP with groups is to give users from specific groups more permissions. Since every user created in Tiki is assigned to the build in group "Registered", you should give "Registered" the same permissions like "Anonymous". You may want to give some LDAP usergroups special permissions. Let one user of that group login to Tiki to automatically create the group. Then assign permissions to that group.

### ***How anonymous binding works***

- connect anonymously to the LDAP server
- get the user DN
- authenticate the user by binding with the server as DN + password

### ***LDAP Pear::Auth Troubleshooting***

You can verify your connection by editing the file `\tiki\lib\pear\Auth\Container\LDAP.php` in line 441 (for `tw < 4`)

from

```
CODE
```

```
$this->options['debug'] = false;
```

to

```
CODE
```

```
$this->options['debug'] = true;
```

After the login you see a screen with a successful binding to the AD/LDAP-Server

```
CODE
```

```
281: Connecting with host:port
288: Successfully connected to server
292: Switching to LDAP version 3
306: Switching LDAP referrals to true
312: Binding with credentials
325: Binding was successful
548: UTF8 encoding username for LDAPv3
```

```
574: Searching with ldap_search and filter (&(sAMAccountName=exampleuser)
(objectClass=*))
      in ou=europe,dc=xnet,dc=oe,dc=examplehost
581: User was found
636: Bind as CN=exampleuser,OU=users,OU=ode,OU=europe,DC=xnet,DC=oe,DC=examplehost
640: Bind successful
650: Authenticated
```

Be aware that after your troubleshooting you must switch off the debug option to login.

## *Aliases*

- [LDAP](#)
  - [AD](#)
  - [Active Directory](#)
- 

## *PAM Authentication tab*

### Overview

Tiki can authenticate users using a PAM server

### Related Topics

- [External Authentication](#)

### To Access

From the [Login Admin](#) page, click the **PAM** tab.

### [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x](#)



### PAM tab

### PAM

Create user if not in Tiki

Use Tiki authentication for Admin login

PAM service: Currently unused

### ***AuthPAM***

AuthPAM provides PAM authentication to Tikiwiki just as Pear Auth does with LDAP.

It's mainly intended for those tiki admins who have integrated their Linux boxes onto their network's authentication using PAM;

For example, admins might have their Linux boxes authenticate through PAM to their Windows 2000 Active Directory Domain (via winbind and kerberos 5) so with AuthPAM then, they can authenticate their networked users against tiki without adding them by hand

### ***Admin Documentation***

[AuthPAMOld](#) configuration is very simple once you've met all the requirements (only a few). Once met you just have to go to the Login section of TikiAdmin.

There will be a nice option onto 'Method' called 'Tiki and PAM' (which you should select if you plan to use it!). Then at the bottom of the screen there are a few options for AuthPAM. You can see:

- Create user if not in Tiki?: Check this if you want Tiki to add users authenticated through PAM but who are not onto it's internal database.
- Use tiki for admin only?: That's to make tiki authenticate the user 'admin' with its internal system, not PAM. If you don't select this option you'll have to add a system user called 'admin'.
- PAM Service (currently unused): Here you should specify which pam service should Tiki authenticate against but these is now disabled due a lack of the auth\_pam php module.

### ***Requirements for AuthPAM***

[AuthPAMOld](#) has a small requirement that must be met in order to work; you need pam\_auth php module. I've seen it's on some Linux distributions but not on all.

On the main page AuthPAM Link's section you can get the link to the author's home to get the module and compile it if your distribution doesn't include a binary package.

After compiling and installing the module as stated in its documentation you have to create a PAM service for Tiki (normally at /etc/pam.d).

Then just jump onto Tikiwiki and setup PAM there.

### ***Permissions!***

Take care of file permissions; remember that php runs with apache privileges, normally a normal user account like www-data or so. If you plan to use PAM against your system's users and your system uses shadowed password you should remember that /etc/shadow is only readable by root, so php won't be able to read it (the PAM library runs with the calling user privileges), so you'll have to workaround it, maybe letting your web server's user read shadow file or so.

### ***Security Issues***

With a default PAM service any account will be granted (try user: nobody ) so here are a few things to take care about that:

It is recommended that you make use of [pam\\_require](#) module to require a specific group to be in for the user. Also you can take a look at [PAM Modules at kernel.org](#) to refine a bit more your pam service for tiki.

Also take note that pam only receives a user/pass pair and checks it; it relays on your web server settings to handle a secure transaction of that pair from the browser to the server. SSL is recommended.

---

## Shibboleth Authentication for TikiWiki

To Enable Shibboleth Authentication you will need to Do 2 main Steps.

### ***Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki***

To enable Shibboleth authentication within the Wiki goto the Admin page and in dropdown box select Shibboleth



When Selected Goto the bottom to the Shibboleth Seettings.



Below is a table of the options and what they do.

Property	Description
Create user if not in Tiki?	This option Creates a user when the user has logged in using Shibboleth but is not in the Wiki.
Just use Tiki auth for admin>	Used to allow admin to login via shibboleth (Not recommended) or just using the tiki Auth
Valid Affiliations	A comma separated list of affiliations which will allow users to log into this Wiki.
Create with a default group	If selected a default group will be created (If no group is specified a default of Shibboleth will be used)
Default Group	the name of the default group. If none Shibboleth will be used.

When the above is completed the wiki is ready to use shibboleth as an authentication source. You will now need to ensure that shibboleth is setup correctly.

Below are the files that were modified to enable Shibboleth Authentication;

- lib/userslib.php
- templates/modules/mod-login\_box.tpl
- templates/tiki-admin-include-login.tpl
- tiki-admin\_include\_login.php
- tiki-setup\_base.php

Below is a table of these files and a description of the changes;

File name	Description
userslib.php	This is used to validate a shibboleth user, changes have been made to the validate_user function.
tiki-admin-include-login.tpl	This file needs to be changed to display "Login through Shibboleth" login box when not logged in.
tiki-admin-include-login.tpl	This file needs to be changed to display the Shibboleth options in the Login Admin page
tiki-admin_include_login.php	This file changes will process the new values in the Login Admin page above.
tiki-setup_base.php	This page will need to be changed to ensure the shibboleth user is validated.

### ***Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth***

To enable the wiki to be protected by Shibboleth you will need to add the following to your apache conf.

```
<Location /tikiwiki/tiki-login_scr.php>
  AuthType shibboleth
  ShibRequireSession On
```



**ShibRequireAll On  
require valid-user  
</Location>**

The other thing you will need to do is update your Shibboleth Service Providers AAP (Attribute Assertion Policy) AAP.XML.

Below are the Attributes required by the Tikiwiki Auth and the required Header values;

```
<AttributeRule Name="urn:mace:dir:attribute-def:eduPersonPrincipalName" Scoped="false"
Header="REMOTE_USER">
```

```
  <AnySite>
```

```
    <!-- Ensure the value is unscoped so all IDs are unique-->
```

```
    <Value Type="regexp">.*@.*</Value>
```

```
  </AnySite>
```

```
</AttributeRule>
```

```
<AttributeRule Name="urn:mace:dir:attribute-def:mail" Header="MAIL">
```

```
  <AnySite>
```

```
    <AnyValue/>
```

```
  </AnySite>
```

```
</AttributeRule>
```

```
<AttributeRule Name="urn:mace:dir:attribute-def:eduPersonAffiliation" Header="Shib-EP-
UnscopedAffiliation">
```

```
  <AnySite>
```

```
    <AnyValue/>
```

```
  </AnySite>
```

```
</AttributeRule>
```

---

## ***CAS Authentication tab***

### **Overview**

Central Authentication Service (<http://www.jasig.org/products/cas/>) is a Web Initial Sign-on (WebISO) system designed by Yale ITS.

### **Related Topics**

- [External Authentication](#)

### **To Access**

From the [Login Admin](#) page, click the CAS tab.

**Note**

CAS Authentication was introduced in [Tiki5](#)

[No Tabs](#)[5.x](#)

SCREEN SHOT, thumbnail at 300px

***Intro***

Central Authentication Service (<http://www.ja-sig.org/products/cas/>) is a Web Initial Sign-on (WebISO) system designed by Yale ITS. CAS facilitates single sign-on across multiple web applications and provides these web services with the ability to authenticate users without having access to their passwords. From an end-user point of view, all protected pages show a standardized CAS challenge page where the user types in their NetID (a unique username of sorts assigned to everyone affiliated with Yale) and password.

Much to our delight, we were able to make Tiki interface with CAS without any customization. Yale ITS provides mod\_cas, an Apache modules that protect webpages through CAS. Since mod\_cas is an Apache module, it behaves like standard HTTP authentication. Tikiwiki supports HTTP authentication. When a user is logged in through HTTP authentication, and the username matches one of the usernames in the Tikiwiki database, Tikiwiki automatically logs the user in. That way, when a user logs in through CAS, Tikiwiki matches the NetID (username) of the user with a pre-created account in its database, and logs the user in.

(Taken from the YaleUniversityITS Case Study.)

***Mod phpcas***

phpCAS documentation can be found at <http://www.ja-sig.org/wiki/display/CASC/phpCAS>

general info about CAS: <http://www.jasig.org/cas>

This is a [stub](#). In [Tiki5](#), it will become a native feature of Tiki. But for now, this mods is currently difficult to install.

See bug report:

[http://dev.tikiwiki.org/tiki-view\\_tracker\\_item.php?itemId=1229&trackerId=5](http://dev.tikiwiki.org/tiki-view_tracker_item.php?itemId=1229&trackerId=5)  
and installation notes below.

### ***Notes from successful install (with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4)***

Make the following modifications to install CAS support successfully on 2.0RC4.  
(Note: These are rough notes--they need confirmation and cleaning up into proper documentation.)

File tikiwiki/mods/Packages/features-phpcas.info.txt

Change to remove the line:

```
features/phpcas/source/CAS/PGTStorage lib/phpcas/source/CAS/PGTStorage
```

*(This will allow the install to complete successfully--otherwise you get an error.)*

File tikiwiki/lib/userslib.php

Comment out lines 290-292 to remove min password length check.

*(On advice from the comments on the bug linked above.)*

If you want to get a log of what phpCAS is doing, in the same file, change line 716 from:

```
phpCAS::setDebug('');
```

to:

```
phpCAS::setDebug('phpcas_debug.log');
```

The logfile will be created in your top-level tikiwiki directory.

*(Can be helpful if CAS isn't working right--lets you see more of what's happening.)*

File tikiwiki/tiki-setup\_base.php

Change line 229 from:

```
$vartype['user'] = '+string'; // remind password page
```

to

```
$vartype['user'] = 'string'; // remind password page
```

*(This will remove the requirement that the "user" variable be defined--for CAS logins, it's not defined)*

*until after the authentication takes place.)*

### ***Install***

See [Mods Admin](#) for instructions on how to install a Mod.

#### Related pages

- [Mods](#)
- [Mods User](#)
- [Mods Admin](#)
- [Mods Details](#)
- [Mods List](#)
  
- <http://esup-phpcas.sourceforge.net>

#### Alias

- [CAS Authentication](#)
- [CAS](#)
- [phpCAS](#)
- [Central Authentication Service](#)
- [Mod phpcas](#)

---

#### phpBB Authentication for TikiWiki

This authentication backend allows you to authenticate users against a [phpBB](#) database.

## *Table of contents*

- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- [General Administration](#)
- [General Preferences tab](#)
- [General Settings tab](#)
- [Navigation tab](#)
- [Date and Time tab](#)
  - [Date and Time Formats](#)
- [Change Admin Password tab](#)
- [Features Admin](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.10\)](#)
    - [Major features](#)
    - [Minor features](#)
    - [Site-wide features](#)
    - [Technical Features](#)
    - [User interface enhancement features](#)
    - [Experimental Features](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
    - [User Features](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.9.x\)](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
      - [User Features](#)
- [General Layout options](#)
  - [Layout-per-section Options](#)
- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Login Administration page](#)
- [General Preferences](#)
  - [Case Sensitivity](#)
  - [Remember Me](#)
  - [Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity](#)
  - [CustomFields](#)
- [LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4](#)

- [Changes](#)
- [Settings](#)
- [LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X](#)
  - [LDAP §fe70dcc7b334983be9d46331092db03d§ General Settings Overview](#)
- [LDAP Authentication tab](#)
  - [How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use](#)
  - [How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki](#)
- [Examples](#)
  - [Unix](#)
  - [Active Directory](#)
  - [Zimbra LDAP](#)
- [Debugging](#)
- [Common Problems and Workarounds](#)
  - [Certificate Problems](#)
- [How it works](#)
  - [Group membership and permissions](#)
  - [How anonymous binding works](#)
- [LDAP §b22ccde9d2a65de3a894a23f4dfd1551§ Troubleshooting](#)
- [Aliases](#)
- [PAM Authentication tab](#)
  - [AuthPAM](#)
    - [Admin Documentation](#)
    - [Requirements for AuthPAM](#)
    - [Permissions!](#)
    - [Security Issues](#)
  - [Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki](#)
  - [Shibboleth step 2:Update Shibboleth](#)
- [Intro](#)
  - [Mod phpcas](#)
- [Notes from successful install \(with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4\)](#)
  - [Install](#)
- [CAS Authentication tab](#)
  - [Requirements for phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [Enabling phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration](#)
    - [phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options](#)

## Requirements for phpBB Authentication

This Authentication backend only works against phpBB version 3.x, also known as phpBB3. It won't work against phpBB2 due to a different password hashing algorithm.

## Enabling phpBB Authentication

To Enable phpBB Authentication you will need to do the following three steps:

### phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication

To enable phpBB Authentication within the Wiki goto the Admin page (Login section -icon of a door and arrow) and in dropdown box select phpBB:



### phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration

Make sure that Registration is turned off:



User registration is handled in the phpBB software.

### phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options

Goto the phpBB tab:



You need to provide the database hostname, user, password, database name and table prefix (if any).

Below is a table of the options and what they do.

Property	Description
Create user if not in Tiki?	This option creates a user when the user has logged in using phpBB but is not in the Wiki.
Use Tiki authentication for Admin login	Use Tiki Auth for Admin login (Recommended).
Disable Tiki users who doesn't have a phpBB login.	Select to disable Tiki users who doesn't have a phpBB login, due to account deletion. (Recommended)

When the above is completed the wiki is ready to use phpBB as an authentication source. You will now need to ensure that phpBB is setup correctly.

You can do that easily by logging in using a phpBB username/password, and try to log in with a non-existing user, and/or wrong password.

---

Table of contents:

---



# Community Administration

## Overview

Use to configure general user features and friendship network settings

## Related Topics

- [User Preferences](#)
- [MyTiki](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Community** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=community>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [User Features](#)
- [Community General Settings](#)
- [Friendship Network](#)

---

## *User Features tab*

## Related Topics

## Overview

Use to specify which features should be enabled regarding users

- [MyTiki](#)

## To Access

From the [Community Admin](#) page, click the **User Features** tab.

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x3.x](#)



User Features tab

Setting	Description	Default
Display <a href="#">MyTiki</a> in the Application Menu		
User Notepad		
User Contacts		
Group Watches		
User Watches Translations		
User Tasks		
User Files		
Group Alert		
Mini Calendar		
User Preferences Screen		
User Bookmarks		
User Watches		
Daily Reports for User Watches		
User Menu		
User Messages		
Menu User Levels		
Users can Change Theme		
Share access rights with friends		
User's page		
Group Transitions		

## User Features

### User Features

Display 'MyTiki' in the application menu	Mini Calendar
User Preferences Screen	User Notepad
User Bookmarks	User Contacts
User Watches	Group Watches
Daily Reports for User Watches	User Watches Translations
User Menu	User Tasks
User Messages	User Files
User Levels	Group Alert
Users can change theme	Share access rights with friends

---

## Community General Settings Tab

### Overview

Use to specify which information (as defined on the user's [MyTiki](#) preferences) appears when a users "mouse-overs" the name of another user.

### Related Topics

- [User Preferences](#)
- [MyTiki](#)

### To Access

From the [Community Admin](#) page, click the **General Preferences** tab.

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x3.x](#)

Community
User features
General Settings
Friendship Network
No Tabs

☐ Show user's real name instead of login (when possible)

Highlight group: None

☐ Show user's contribution on the user information page

Display UserTracker information on the user information page:

Use the format: trackerid, fieldid1, fieldid2, ...

You need to set Use tracker to collect more user information

☐ Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page

You need to set Action Log

Number of days to consider who viewed my stuff: 90

☐ Show to others who viewed my stuff on the user information page

You need to set Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page

☐ Store full-size copy of avatar in file gallery

File gallery to store full-size copy of avatar in: 0

Community

☒ Users can choose to show their gender

You need to set User Preferences Screen

☐ Show user's information on mouseover

Requires user's information to be public

Default user preferences

Character set for mail: utf-8

Language: Default

Requires Users can change site language (OK)

Number of visited pages to remember: 4

Displayed time zone:

☒ Use site default to show times

☐ Detect user timezone (if browser allows). Otherwise use site default.

User information: Private

☐ Use double-click to edit pages

Requires Wiki (OK)

☐ Show user's info on mouseover

You need to set Show user's information on mouseover

Tasks per page: 10

You need to set User Tasks

User messages

Messages per page: 10

You need to set User Messages

☒ Allow messages from other users

You need to set User Messages

☐ Notify sender when reading mail

You need to set User Messages

Send me an email for messages with priority equal or greater than: 3

You need to set User Messages

Auto-archive read messages after: Never days

You need to set User Messages

My Tiki

☒ My pages

Requires Wiki (OK)

☒ My blogs

Requires Blog (OK)

☒ My galleries

You need to set Image Gallery

☒ My messages

## General Settings tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Fieldset or section</b>		
Show user's real name instead of login (when possible)		
Highlight group		
Show user's contribution on the user information page		
Display UserTracker information on the user information page	Use the format: trackerId, fieldId1, fieldId2, ... (Requires Use tracker to collect more user information)	
Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page		
Number of days to consider who viewed my stuff		
Show to others who viewed my stuff on the user information page (Requires Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page)		
Store full-size copy of avatar in file gallery		
File gallery to store full-size copy of avatar in		
<b>Community</b>		
Users can choose to show their gender	Requires User Preferences Screen	
Show user's information on mouseover	Requires user's information to be public Select which fields appear: Real name, Gender, Picture (avatar), Number of friends, Score	
Country, E-mail, Last login, Distance		
<b>Default user preferences</b>		
<b>   Default user preferences</b>		
Character set for mail		
Language		
Number of visited pages to remember		
Displayed time zone	Select if dates and times for users are shown using the site's default, or if Tiki should attempt to detect the user's timezone	
User information	Specify if users' information is <b>Public</b> or <b>Private</b> .	
Use double-click to edit pages	If enabled, users can edit wiki pages by double-clicking on the page instead of using the Edit button or icon.	
Show user's info on mouseover		
Tasks per page		
<b>User messages</b>		
Messages per page		

Setting	Description	Default
Allow messages from other users		
Notify sender when reading mail		
Send me an email for messages with priority equal or greater than		
Auto-archive read messages after	Number of days after which Tiki will archive users' read messages.	
<b>My Tiki</b>		
My pages	If enabled, Tiki will list all wiki pages edited by the user	
My blogs	If enabled, Tiki will list all blogs and blog posts edited by the user	
My galleries	If enabled, Tiki will list all galleries edited by the user	
My messages	If enabled, Tiki will list all messages and replies by the user	
My tasks		
My forum topics	If enabled, Tiki will list all forum topics by the user	
My forum replies	If enabled, Tiki will list all forum replies by the user	
My items	If enabled, Tiki will list all tracker items by the user	

Setting	Description	Default
__Fieldset or section__		
Show user's real name instead of login (when possible)		
Highlight group		
Show user's contribution on the user information page		
Display UserTracker information on the user information page	Use the format: trackerId, fieldId1, fieldId2, ... (Requires Use tracker to collect more user information)	
Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page		
Number of days to consider who viewed my stuff		
Show to others who viewed my stuff on the user information page (Requires Display who viewed my stuff on the user information page)		

Setting	Description	Default
Store full-size copy of avatar in file gallery		
File gallery to store full-size copy of avatar in		
__Community__		
Users can choose to show their gender	Requires User Preferences Screen	
Show user's information on mouseover	Requires user's information to be public Select which fields appear: Real name, Gender, Picture (avatar), Number of friends, Score	
Country, E-mail, Last login, Distance		
__Default user preferences__		__Default user preferences__
		Character set for mail
		Language
		Number of visited pages to remember
		Displayed time zone
		User information
		Use double-click to edit pages
		Show user's info on mouseover
		Tasks per page
		__User messages__
		Messages per page
		Allow messages from other users
		Notify sender when reading mail
		Send me an email for messages with priority equal or

Setting	Description	Default
		greater than
Auto-archive read messages after		Number of days after which Tiki will archive users' read messages.
__My Tiki__		
My pages		If enabled, Tiki will list all wiki pages edited by the user
My blogs		If enabled, Tiki will list all blogs and blog posts edited by the user
My galleries		If enabled, Tiki will list all galleries edited by the user
My messages		If enabled, Tiki will list all messages and replies by the user
My tasks		
My forum topics		If enabled, Tiki will list all forum topics by the user
My forum replies		If enabled, Tiki will list all forum replies by the user
My items		If enabled, Tiki will list all tracker items by the user
User Identity Features		

\_\_Setting\_\_ | \_\_Description\_\_

Show user's info|Specify if a popup box appears when you mouseover a user's name.

Name|Show the user's [Real Name](#).

Picture|Show the user's [Avatar](#).

Number of friends|

Score|

Country|Show the user's [Country](#).

E-mail|Show the user's [Email](#), if it is public.

Last login|Show the date of the user's [Last login](#).

Distance|Show the approximate distance between you and the user, if



Setting	Description	Default
both of you have completed the __Longitude__ and __Latitude__ fields in your <a href="#">User Preferences</a> .		

## Friendship Network tab

### Related Topics

#### Overview

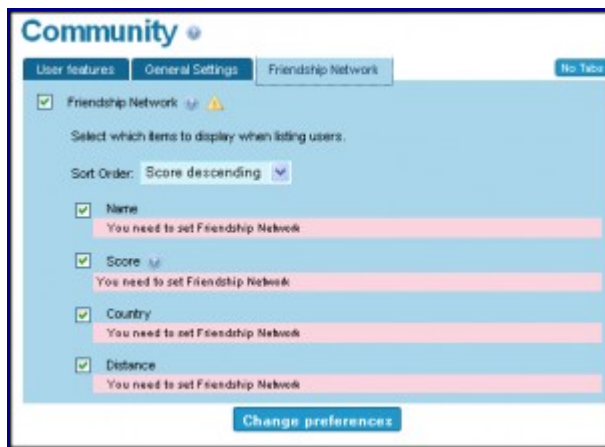
Use to create a system where users can become connected

- [Friendster-like features, \(A forum post\)](#)
- [CommunityConnections](#)

#### To Access

From the [Community Admin](#) page, click the **Friendship Network** tab.

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x3.x](#)



#### Friendship Network tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Friendship Network</b>	If enabled, select which items to display when listing users: Name, Score, Country, and Distance. You can also specify the order in which to display users.	Disabled

Here is a brief idea about the `FriendsNetwork()`

## ***General Description***

The Friendship Network is a system where we may ask our fellow Tiki users to be part of our direct contacts. Helping to create a connected community.

## ***Key Function and sub-features***

Allows members to request communication. If the request is answered then you will be added to the persons "Friends" list.

- A new menu "Community" is created, with the correct perms this allows you to see the member list.
- A sub menu "Friendship Network" takes you to your friend list.
- Posts by your friends will have a friend icon
- At the users profile there is a "This user is your friend" note.

## ***Typical Uses***

This could be used in a large community to help get people connected.

Used in conjunction with the trackers this could be a powerful way for people to connect.

- Arranging events
- Finding friends

When invited into a user's network, you will receive a Tiki Message (in your [MyTiki](#) area, similar to the following:

```
From: Webkeeper
To: jamesoftopiya
Cc:
Subject:
You're invited to join my network of friends!
Date:
Mon 09 of Aug, 2004
Go to your friendship network to accept or refuse this request
```



# Admin Profiles Page

## Overview

Tiki profiles allow you to apply a pre-defined configuration to your Tiki

## Related Topics

- [Tiki Profiles](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Profiles** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=profiles>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Apply Profiles](#)
- [Profiles Advanced](#)

## Note

In Tiki 1.9.x, profiles could be applied only during installation.

## Typical Uses

- test suite : build a collection of samples representative of data in different quantity, using every features, for use with a testuite.

## *For more information*

- <http://profiles.tikiwiki.org>
- old:
  - [Using profiles with old system](#) and [Create a Profile](#) which duplicate some info
  - [TikiProfilesDev](#)

# Alias

- [Profile](#)
  - [Configuration Profile](#)
  - [Configuration Profiles](#)
  - [Apply a Profile](#)
  - [Apply Profiles](#)
  - [Install Profile](#)
  - [Install Profiles](#)
  - [Installation Profile](#)
  - [Installation Profiles](#)
  - [Profile manager](#)
  - [Profiles manager](#)
- 

## *Apply Profiles tab*

### Related Topics

#### Overview

Use this tab to select an apply a profile from a repository to your Tiki

- [Installation](#)
- [Configuration](#)
- [Tiki Profiles](#)

#### To Access

From the [Profiles Admin](#) page, click the **Apply Profiles** tab.

#### Note

Starting in [Tiki3](#) the profile system is a powerful and versatile system that can be managed by the Tiki community. See <http://profiles.tikiwiki.org>. Profiles give the installer a choice of partially configured sites to install. They give a head start on the configuration process by picking a type of site that is similar in purpose.

### [No Tabs](#)

## 6.x3.x2.x1.9.x



**Profiles**

Apply Profiles: **Advanced**

**Configure Tiki in 3 easy steps using Profiles**

Profiles

Step 1: Use the Quick or Manual Filter option to see a list of Profiles you can apply

Option 2: Manual Filter

Filter the list of profiles:

Profile:

3.x  
4.x  
5.x  
Featured profiles  
Full profile (out of the box & ready to go)

Categories:

Repository:  [List](#)

Step 2: Click on a Profile to review and see description

Profile	Repository	Categories
Collaborative_Community_6.x	profiles.tiki.org	beta, Featured profiles, 6.x
siteSite	Our community	
siteSubSite	Log on, Learn, Share	
browserSite	Community Wiki	

[Apply Now](#)



Step 3: Click on Apply Now to apply Profile

**Table of contents**

PLEASE READ  
Introduction  
Features (Quick List)  
YAML (Profile Code)  
General  
Wiki  
Forum  
Search

Company_Intranet_6.x	profiles.tiki.org	beta, Featured profiles, 6.x
Personal_Blog_and_Profile_6.x	profiles.tiki.org	beta, Featured profiles, 6.x
Small_Organization_Web_Presence_6.x	profiles.tiki.org	beta, Featured profiles, 6.x

Status

Profile repository	Status	Last update
http://profiles.tiki.org		2011-02-07 21:50:04 

Apply Profiles tab

### Setting Description Default

#### Fieldset or section

Field name Description Value

Starting in version 2.x (as a hidden feature) and specially after 3.x, you can point your browser to **tiki-admin.php?page=profiles** ("Admin home > Profiles"), allowing to set up at any time bunches of features in a certain way to produce specific use case of interest.

New Tiki 2.x and 3.x profile system

Flash player not available.

Overview of Tiki 3: Installation and applying several profiles

Flash player not available.

Old profile system (< Tiki 2.x)

In Tiki 1.9, profiles were only active during the installation process. You could not go back and pick a different profile unless you re-installed the database, losing all your changes.



Selection of profile at <http://yourdomain/tiki-install.php?lang=XX>

## ***Requirements***

Your php must have the option [allow\\_url\\_fopen](#) On or must have the library [curl](#) installed.  
Javascript must also be enabled on your browser

## ***Details of Supported Profiles***

### ***Tiki 3.x***

See <http://profiles.tikiwiki.org>

Starting in version 2.x (as a hidden feature) and specially after 3.x, you can point your browser to **tiki-admin.php?page=profiles** ("Admin home > Profiles"), allowing to set up at any time bunches of features in a certain way to produce specific use case of interest.

New Tiki 2.x and 3.x profile system

Flash player not available.

Overview of Tiki 3: Installation and applying several profiles

Flash player not available.

Old profile system (< Tiki 2.x)

In Tiki 1.9, profiles were only active during the installation process. You could not go back and pick a different profile unless you re-installed the database, losing all your changes.



Selection of profile at <http://yourdomain/tiki-install.php?lang=XX>

## Requirements

Your php must have the option [allow\\_url\\_fopen](#) On or must have the library [curl](#) installed. Javascript must also be enabled on your browser

## Details of Supported Profiles

### Tiki 3.x

See <http://profiles.tikiwiki.org>

"Profiles" up to Tiki 1.9.x was a [feature](#) used only when you [install](#) Tikiwiki. It set up the Tikiwiki according to an existing configuration that was "saved" from another site.

Until version 2.x, this feature is only active during the installation process. You could not go back and pick a different profile unless you re-installed the database, losing all your changes.

---

## Profiles Advanced tab

### Overview

Use this tab to specify a Tiki repository URL and data channel

### Related Topics

- [Tiki Profiles](#)

### To Access

From the [Profiles Admin](#) page, click the **Advanced** tab.



## No Tabs

### 6.x



Setting	Description	Default
<b>Repositories</b>		
Repository	Fully qualified URL of a repository	<a href="http://profiles.tiki.org">http://profiles.tiki.org</a>
Data channel		
<b>Profile Tester</b>		

# Look & Feel

## Overview

Use this page to customize the design of your Tiki site, to apply themes, add custom coding.

## Related Topics

- [Theme](#)
- [Site Identity](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Look & Feel** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=look>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Look and Feel Theme](#)
- [General Layout Options](#)
- [Shadow Layer](#)
- [Pagination Links](#)
- [UI Effects](#)
- [Custom CSS](#)
- [Miscellaneous](#)

## Note

In [Tiki3](#) and earlier, this was called the the [Site Identity](#)

# Alias

- [Site Identity](#)
- [Look and Feel Admin](#)

## Theme tab

### Overview

Use this tab to select your Tiki theme and options, and other template configurations.

### Related Topics

- [Tiki Themes](#)

### To Access

From the [Look and Feel Admin](#) page, click the **Themes** tab.

### Note

You can obtain additional themes at <http://themes.tiki.org>

### No Tabs

### 6.x2.x



Theme tab (courtesy of Tiki for Smarties)

Option	Description
Theme	Select the theme (from the available files in ../styles/*.css)
Theme options	Some themes may have additional options, such as specific coloring or sizes
Uses can change theme	Allows users to change the theme (for example, via the Switch Theme module)
Each group can have its own theme	Specifies if each <a href="#">Group</a> has a unique theme (specified by the user's <i>default</i> Group)
Slideshow theme	Select the theme for use when viewing wiki slideshows
Edit CSS	See <a href="#">Edit CSS</a>
Theme Control	See <a href="#">Theme Control</a>

Option	Description
Tiki Template Viewing	
Edit Templates	See <a href="#">Edit Template Docs</a>
Smarty Template usage indicator	If enabled, Tiki will insert HTML comment tags to signify the start and end of content generated from specific TPL templates. <b>Note:</b> Do not enable this option for production sites.
Categories used in templates	

## Key Function and sub-features

Site Identity can be enabled by switching the checkbox on (off by default) at Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Features page. In Tiki 2.2, the Site Identity checkbox is on the Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel page, in the Theme tab. The main sub-feature is the Site Logo which will appear on the top Site Header of every Tikiwiki page and by default it links to the index page (".") of the used site as is common.

Site Identity Settings can be found on Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Site Identity (it used to be on the General settings page). In Tiki 2.2 these settings can be found on the Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel page, in the General Layout tab.

Currently you can:

- enable Site Location bar (aka breadcrumbs)
- customize the Site Logo image source, background color, title and alt attributes
- put your own Custom Code in the Site Header
- setup banner zones and enable the Banner area
- enable Site Search bar

This is the admin interface at "**Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Site Identity**" (similar to the corresponding interface at "**Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel -> General Layout**" in Tiki 2.2)



**Webmaster Report:** tikiwiki >= 2.0 . This will add at the bottom of your screen a 'Report Webmaster' that will open



Requirement: You need the permission tiki\_p\_site\_report to see the link

**Send a link:** tikiwiki >= 2.0. This will add at the bottom of your screen a 'Send a Link' that will open



Requirement: You need the feature 'tell a friend' activated and the permission tiki\_p\_tell\_a\_friend.

### Note:

In case you can publish more than 250 characters under "**Custom code > content**", and you can't see the option to enable more than 250 characters in the tiki interface as in the above screenshot, you can manually do so in the database itself.



You can go to your database using PhpMyAdmin<sup>?</sup> (database *tiki19\_dreecerca* in this example above, select **tiki\_preferences** table, and **edit the "value" field** of the table (see the hand icon on the screenshot, on the edit button) **from "varchar(250)" to "text"**, so that it ends like in the previous screenshot.

## Examples

### *Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.*

Here is one of several different ways. This one in particular puts your banner logo image in the top left corner and then repeats another image from the right side of that image all the way across to the right side of the page (in effect, continuing the vertical pattern on the right side of your logo horizontally all the way across the page).



To do this, first upload into your gallery your banner logo (image id=3 below) and a 1px wide image of the right side of your logo (image id=14 below). Then go to: Admin, Admin Home, Look & Feel, General Layout (./tiki-admin.php?page=look#layout), Custom Site Header. Check Activate and Publish checkboxes. In the Content text box, enter something like:

```
<div style="height: 120px; background: transparent url('/tw2/show_image.php?id=14')
repeat-x"></div>
```

Credit be to luciash!

*And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo*

```
{if $page ne ''}
<div style="float:right;">
  {if $page eq 'HomePage'}
    
  {elseif $page eq 'Other Page'}
    
  {/if}
</div>
{/if}
<div style="height: 120px; background: transparent url('/tw2/show_image.php?id=31')
repeat-x">
  <a href="http://domain.com"></a>
</div>
```

---

## General Layout Options tab

### Overview

Use this tab to select your Tiki theme and options, and other template configurations.

### Related Topics

- [Tiki Themes](#)

### To Access

From the [Look and Feel Admin](#) page, click the **General Layout Options** tab.

### Note

Many of these options were introduced in Tiki 1.9.2, as the Site Identity feature.

### [No Tabs](#)

[Tiki 6 Tiki 2](#)

## Look & Feel

Configuration search:

**Search**



**Apply** **Reset**

**No Tabs**

Theme **General Layout options** Shadow layer Pagination links UI Effects Custom CSS Miscellaneous


Custom HTML <head> Content: 

Example: `{if $page eq 'Slideshow'}{literal}<style type='text/css'>.slideshow { height: 232px; width: 232px; }</style>{/literal}{/if}`

☒ Fixed width  

Secondary site menu custom code:

☒ Custom Site Header

 The Custom Site Header will display for the Admin only. Select **Publish** to display the content for all users.

Content: 

```
{if $tiki_p_admin == "y"}
<div id="quickadmin" style="text-align: left; padding-left: 12px;"><small>
(tr)Quick Admin(/tr)</small>:
(icon_id=database_refresh title="(tr)Clear all Tiki caches(/tr)" href="tiki-admin_system.php?do=all")
(icon_id=wrench title="(tr)Modify the look & feel (logo, theme,
etc.) (/tr)" href="tiki-admin.php?page=look&cookieTab=2")
{/tr}</div>
Example: {if $user neq ''}<div align="right" style="float: right; font-size: 10px;">{tr}logged as{tr}: {user}</div>{/if}
```

☐ Publish

☒ Site Logo and Title

Logo

Logo source (image path):

Logo background color:

Examples: 1) silver - 2) #fff

Logo background style:

Examples: 1) silver url(myStyle/img.gif) repeat - 2) padding: 30px 10px; background: #fff

Logo alignment:  

Logo title (on mouse over):

Alt. description (e.g. for text browsers):

Title

Site title:  

Subtitle:  

☒ Login Bar

☒ Top Bar

☐ Site menu bar

☒ Search Bar

Requires MySQL Full-Text Search (OK)

Custom code:



Theme tab (courtesy of Tiki for Smarties)

Option	Description
Custom HTML head Content	
Fixed width	
Secondary site menu custom code	
Custom Site Header	
Site Logo and Title	
Logo source	
*Logo background color	
*Logo background style	
*Logo alignment	
*Logo title	
*Alt description	
Title	
*Site title	
*Subtitle	
Login Bar	
Top Bar	
*Site menu bar	
*Search Bar	
*Custom code	
Custom Center Column Header	
Left column	
Right column	
Breadcrumbs	
Custom Site Footer	
Custom End of body Code	
Bottom bar	
*Bottom bar icons	
*Bottom bar debug	
*Bottom bar (RSS)	
*Add a Powered by...	
**Display current Tiki version	
Site Status bar	
*Webmaster Report	
*Webmaster email	
*Email this page	

## Key Function and sub-features

Site Identity can be enabled by switching the checkbox on (off by default) at Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Features page. In Tiki 2.2, the Site Identity checkbox is on the Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel page, in the Theme tab. The main sub-feature is the Site Logo which will appear on the top Site Header of every Tikiwiki page and by default it links to the index page (".") of the used site as is common.

Site Identity Settings can be found on Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Site Identity (it used to be on the General settings page). In Tiki 2.2 these settings can be found on the Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel page, in the General Layout tab.

Currently you can:

- enable Site Location bar (aka breadcrumbs)
- customize the Site Logo image source, background color, title and alt attributes
- put your own Custom Code in the Site Header
- setup banner zones and enable the Banner area
- enable Site Search bar


This is the admin interface at "**Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Site Identity**" (similar to the corresponding interface at "**Admin -> (Admin Home ->) Look & Feel -> General Layout**" in Tiki 2.2)



**Webmaster Report:** tikiwiki >= 2.0 . This will add at the bottom of your screen a 'Report Webmaster' that will open

# Report to the Webmaster

[Back](#)



Link	<input type="text" value="http://disco/tiki1.10/tiki-admin.php?page=look"/>
Your name	<input type="text" value="admin"/>
Your email	<input type="text" value="s_@_l.com"/>
Your comment	<div>  <div></div> </div>
	<input type="button" value="Send"/>

Requirement: You need the permission tiki\_p\_site\_report to see the link

**Send a link:** tikiwiki >= 2.0. This will add at the bottom of your screen a 'Send a Link' that will open

# Send a link to a friend

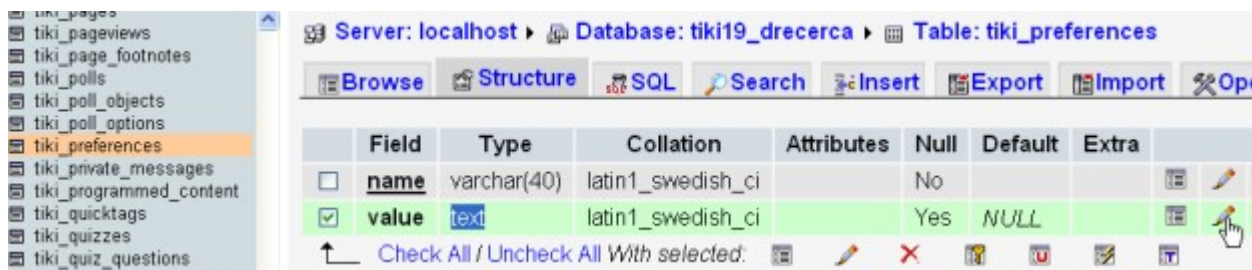
[Back](#)

Link	<a href="http://disco/tiki1.10/tiki-admin.php?page=look">http://disco/tiki1.10/tiki-admin.php?page=look</a>
List of email addresses separated by commas	<input type="text"/>
Your name	<input type="text" value="admin"/>
Your email	<input type="text" value="s@...@com"/>
Your comment	<div>     </div> <input type="text"/>
	<a href="#">Send</a>

Requirement: You need the feature 'tell a friend' activated and the permission tiki\_p\_tell\_a\_friend.

## Note:

In case you can publish more than 250 characters under "**Custom code > content**", and you can't see the option to enable more than 250 characters in the tiki interface as in the above screenshot, you can manually do so in the database itself.



You can go to your database using [PhpMyAdmin?](#) (database *tiki19\_dreccerca* in this example above, select **tiki\_preferences** table, and edit the "**value**" field of the table (see the hand icon on the screenshot, on the edit button) from "**varchar(250)**" to "**text**", so that it ends like in the previous screenshot.

## Examples

### *Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.*

Here is one of several different ways. This one in particular puts your banner logo image in the top left corner and then repeats another image from the right side of that image all the way across to the right side of the page (in effect, continuing the vertical pattern on the right side of your logo horizontally all the way across the page).



To do this, first upload into your gallery your banner logo (image id=3 below) and a 1px wide image of the right side of your logo (image id=14 below). Then go to: Admin, Admin Home, Look & Feel, General Layout (./tiki-admin.php?page=look#layout), Custom Site Header. Check Activate and Publish checkboxes. In the Content text box, enter something like:

```
<div style="height: 120px; background: transparent url('/tw2/show_image.php?id=14')
repeat-x"></div>
```

Credit be to luciash!

### *And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo*

```
{if $page ne ''}
<div style="float:right;">
  {if $page eq 'HomePage'}
    
  {elseif $page eq 'Other Page'}
    
  {/if}
</div>
{/if}
<div style="height: 120px; background: transparent url('/tw2/show_image.php?id=31')
repeat-x">
  <a href="http://domain.com"></a>
</div>
```

---

## Shadow Layer tab

### Overview

### Related Topics

Use this tab to select your Tiki theme and options, and other template configurations.

### To Access

From the [Look and Feel Admin](#) page, click the **General Layout Options** tab.

### Note

Many of these options were introduced in Tiki 1.9.2, as the Site Identity feature.

[No Tabs](#)  
[Tiki 6](#)

Shadow Layer tab

Option	Description
Shadow layer	Additional layers for shadows, rounded corners or other decorative styling

## Pagination Links tab

### Overview

Use this tab to specify how Tiki displays pagination in lists.

### Related Topics

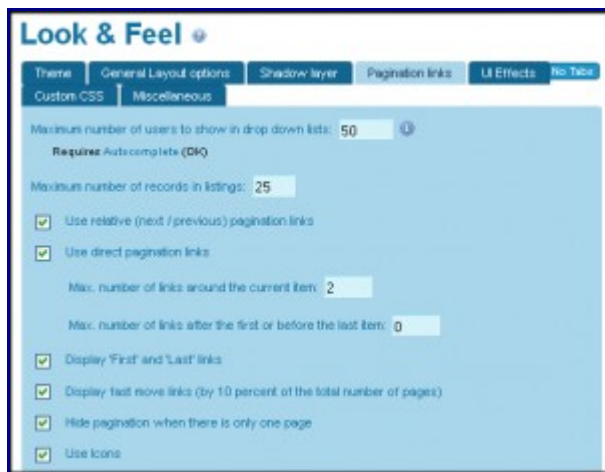
- [Tiki Themes](#)

### To Access

From the [Look and Feel Admin](#) page, click the **Pagination Links** tab.

### No Tabs

### Tiki 6



### Pagination Links tab

Option	Description
Maximum number of users to show in drop down lists:	
Maximum number of records in listings:	
Use relative (next / previous) pagination links	
Use direct pagination links	
Max. number of links around the current item:	
Max. number of links after the first or before the last item:	
Display 'First' and 'Last' links	
Display fast move links (by 10 percent of the total number of pages)	
Hide pagination when there is only one page	
Use Icons	



## UI Effects tab

### Overview

Use this tab to select the standard configuraiton of specific UI (including JS and JQ) effects.

### Related Topics

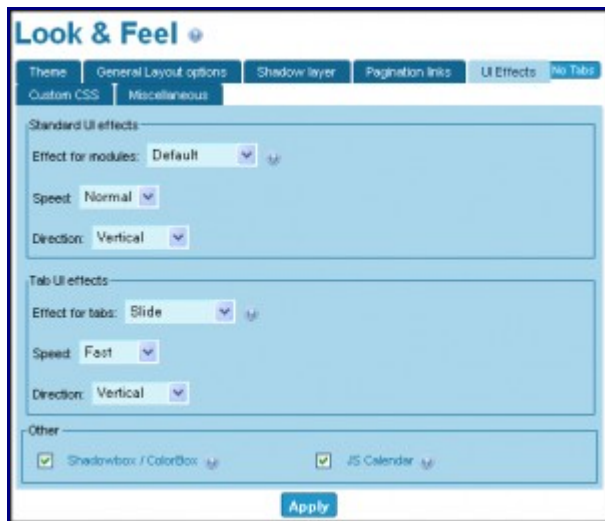
- [Tiki Themes](#)

### To Access

From the [Look and Feel Admin](#) page, click the **Pagination Links** tab.

### No Tabs

#### 6.x



### UI Effects tab

Setting	Description	Default
---------	-------------	---------

#### Standard UI effects

Effect for modules:

Speed:

Direction:

Setting	Description	Default
---------	-------------	---------

**Tab UI effects**

Effect for tabs:

Speed:

Direction:

**Other**

Shadowbox / ColorBox

JS Calendar

---

## *Custom CSS tab*

**Overview**

Use this tab to add custom CSS styles to your site.

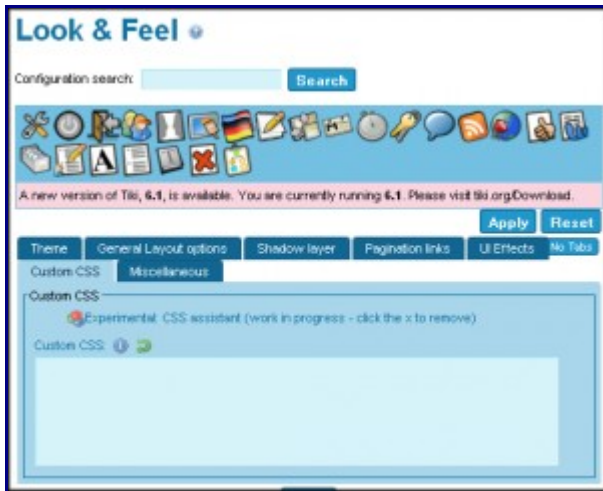
**Related Topics**

- [Tiki Themes](#)

**To Access**

From the [Look and Feel Admin](#) page, click the **Pagination Links** tab.

[No Tabs](#)[6.x](#)



Custom CSS

Setting	Description	Default
Custom CSS		

## Miscellaneous tab

### Overview

Use this tab to add custom CSS styles to your site.

### Related Topics

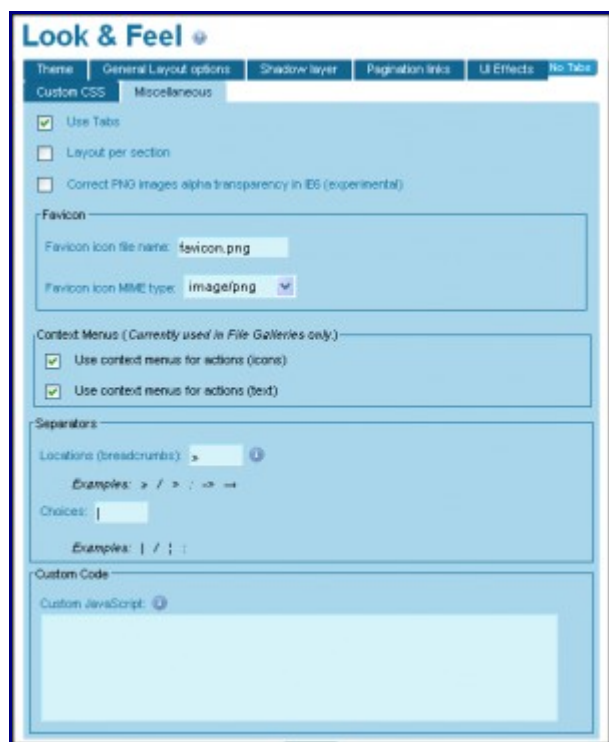
- [Tiki Themes](#)

### To Access

From the [Look and Feel Admin](#) page, click the **Pagination Links** tab.

### No Tabs

### 6.x



Setting	Description	Default
---------	-------------	---------

Use Tabs

Layout per section

Correct PNG images alpha transparency in IE6 (experimental)

CSS selectors to be fixed:

Separate multiple elements with a comma (,)

HTMLDomElements to be fixed:

Separate multiple elements with a comma (,)

### Favicon

Favicon icon file name:

Favicon icon MIME type:

Context Menus (Currently used in File Galleries only.)

Use context menus for actions (icons)

Use context menus for actions (text)

### Separators

Locations (breadcrumbs):

Examples: » / > : -> →

Choices:

Examples: | / | :

Setting	Description	Default
Custom Code		
Custom JavaScript		

---

# Internationalization (i18n)

**Internationalization** in computer science means the process of making a computer program ready to support many languages (have the interface translated in to different languages which the user can select according to his/her preferences, showing content or menus for some languages but not others, etc.).

**TIP:**

*It is often also known as "**i18n**" (since the word **internationalization** is quite long, but is the most common word starting with an **I**, followed by **18** more characters, and ending with an **n**:  $i+18+n = \text{"i18n"}$ ).*

*A similar approach was followed with the word **localization** (the process of making a new translation for a local language in an internationalized software) as "**l10n**" ( $= l+10+n$ ).*

## Overview

Tiki was designed to be multilingual since the beginning and is nowadays translated to over 35 languages. The standard out-of-the-box Tiki installation is designed to work in a multilingual environment. If ever you encounter any problems, please consult with your ISP or server administrator to make sure your database is configured to supports UTF-8 [character encoding](#) (which almost certainly the case).

The list and the status of the strings translations for the Tiki interface are updated on: <http://tiki.org/i18n>. The strings are the messages and the menu labels.

As an administrator, you can build a monolingual site other than an English one or a multilingual site. As a user, you can view a multilingual site in you favorite language, and have pages translated into other languages. Starting in [Tiki2](#), it is MUCH easier for your community to keep wiki pages updated and synchronized among all translations. Please see: <http://wiki-translation.com/Cross+Lingual+Wiki+Engine+Project>

More documentation

- [Interface translation 2](#)
- [i18n Admin](#)
- [Multilingual Article](#)
- [Multilingual categories](#)
- [Multilingual Module](#)
- [Multilingual Menu](#)

- [Multilingual Structures](#)
- [Multilingual tags](#)
- [Multilingual Trackers](#)
- [Multilingual Wiki](#)
- [Machine Translation](#)
- [Interface translation](#)
  - [Interactive Translation](#)
- [Best language](#)
- [UTF-8](#)
- [Character Encoding](#)
- [PluginLang](#)
- [PluginTr](#)
- [PluginTranslated](#)
- [Module switch\\_lang](#)
- [Module switch\\_lang2](#)
- [Module translation](#)
- [http://profiles.tiki.org/Collaborative\\_Multilingual\\_Terminology](http://profiles.tiki.org/Collaborative_Multilingual_Terminology)
- [http://profiles.tiki.org/Multilingual\\_Wiki](http://profiles.tiki.org/Multilingual_Wiki)

#### Alias

- [Internationalization](#)
- 显示中文

---

Table of contents:

---

## ***Babelfish Links***

### **Overview**

Use this tab to enable Babelfish links at the bottom of the Tiki site (for machine translation).

### Related Topics

- [Machine Translation](#)
- [Multilingual Wiki](#)

### **To Access**

From the [i18n Admin](#) page, click the **Babelfish** tab.

## Note

Babelfish machine translation is provided by [Yahoo!](#).

[No Tabs](#)

[6.x](#)



Babelfish Links tab

Setting	Description	Default
Translation URLs	Display text links to translate the page	
Translation Icons	Display flag icons to translate the page	

## Customized String Translation tab

### Overview

Use this tab to add custom translations to the language database.

Related Topics

- [i18n](#)

### To Access

From the [General Admin](#) page, click the **General Preferences** tab.

## Note

*if applicable*

[No Tabs](#)

[6.x](#)





Customized String

---

Table of contents:

- [Editing and Plugins General Settings](#)
- [Plugins](#)
- [Plugin Aliases](#)

---

Table of contents:

---

Table of contents:

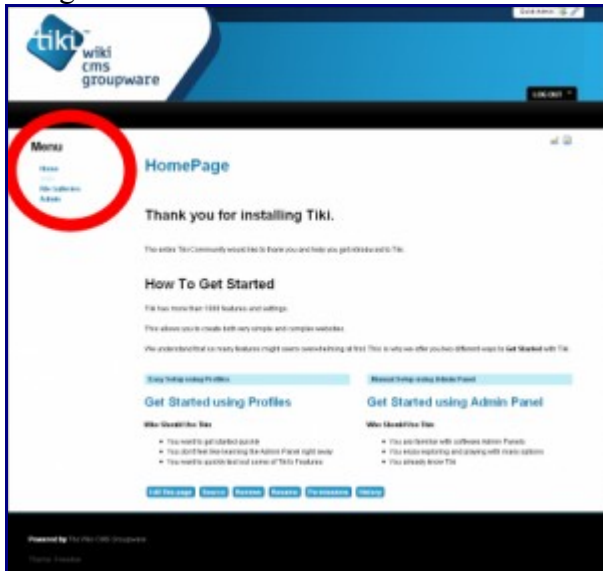
---

Table of contents:

---

# Modules

In Tiki, a **module** is simply a box of content. Use the [Modules Admin](#) page to add modules to the left or right column of a Tiki site.



Default Tiki page with the Menu module in the left column.

Some common uses for modules are to:

- Display [menus](#)
- Add special [features](#)
- Display custom information to users

After adding modules, you can re-order them, assign [permissions](#) to them (so they appear only for specific user [groups](#) ), or even allow them to be customized by specific users.

In addition to appearing in the the left or right column, you can also include a module in any wiki text area by using the [Module plugin](#).



**Note:** Even though they are called *modules*, nearly all are included with the default Tiki installation. There are no additional "add-ons" to be installed in order to use these modules.

## *Modules vs. Plugins*

The distinction between **modules** and [plugins](#) is a little blurry. Technically speaking, modules are the *containers* and plugins are the *content*. However, the predefined modules included with the default Tiki installation contain plugins/content, but they are commonly called **modules**, too.

## *Related pages*

[Module admin](#) - explains how to create, choose and place modules on the site.

[User modules](#) - explains how (if the feature is active) users can choose and place their modules.

[Module Parameters](#) - description of module parameters that are available to all modules .

# Tiki Modules

This section organized the modules by content category. Below that is a table of contents of the documentation for each module. You can also create custom modules, called **User Modules**.

[No Tabs](#)

[Feature](#)[User's Config](#)[Navigation](#)[Recent Changes](#)[Best Of](#)[Help](#)[Search](#)[MyTiki](#)[Miscellaneous](#)

## Feature Modules

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">articles</a>	Articles		title, type, topicId, topic, start	
<a href="#">breadcrumb</a>	Recently visited pages	Lists recently-visited pages.	maxlen	
<a href="#">calendar</a>	Calendar-Filter			
<a href="#">calendar</a>	Calendar-Filter		3.x, 4.x, 5.x, 6.x	
<a href="#">categories</a>		Displays category objects.	type, deep, categId, style	1.10
<a href="#">change_category</a>			id, shy (show only if page is in categ)	
<a href="#">comm_received_objects</a>				
<a href="#">directory_stats</a>	Directory stats			
<a href="#">featured_links</a>	Featured links	Displays featured links.		
<a href="#">minichat</a>	Mini chat	Shows a small box for chat updated at real time without browser refresh.		
<a href="#">random_pages</a>		Displays a link to a random wiki page.		
<a href="#">random_images</a>		Displays a random image thumbnail.	galleryId	
<a href="#">shoutbox</a>		post comments in to the module for all to see	tooltip	
<a href="#">who_is_there</a>	Online users	Lists usernames of logged-in users.	cluster	
<a href="#">logged_users</a>	Online users	Shows the number of logged-in users.		
<a href="#">login_box</a>		The login/logout box	input_size (since 1.10)=size in characters of the text input box	
<a href="#">online_users</a>	Online users	Lists real names of logged-in users.		

## User's Configuration Modules

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">switch_lang</a>		Switch site language (dropdown list selector).	title, nobox, flip, decorations	
<a href="#">switch_lang2</a>		Switch site language (select among text links).	title, nobox, flip, decorations	
<a href="#">switch_theme</a>		Allows users to switch site theme		

## Navigation Modules

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">directory_last_sites</a>		Lists latest sites links added to Directory.	nonums, absurl ( [y n] - If not set, default = relative)	
<a href="#">directory_stats</a>		Shows Directory statistics.		
<a href="#">directory_top_sites</a>		Shows most-visited sites in Directory.		
<a href="#">whats_related</a>		Lists objects in same category as current page/object.		

## Recent Changes Modules

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">forums_last_posts</a>		Lists recent forum posts.	nonums	
<a href="#">forums_last_topics</a>		Lists recent new forum topics. Or in version 1.10, also recently replied to forum topics	nonums, absurl	
<a href="#">since_last_visit</a>		Shows changes in various features since last login		
<a href="#">since_last_visit_new</a>		Shows changes in various features since last login	showuser ,showtracker	
<a href="#">wiki_last_comments</a>		Most recently added wiki comments	moretooltips, nonums	
<a href="#">last_actions</a>		Displays latest users' actions.	showuser, showdate, nonums, maxlen	
<a href="#">last_articles</a>		Displays latest articles.	type, topicId. topic,	

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">last_blog_posts</a>		display latest <a href="#">blog</a> posts	nonums, absurl blogid, title, nonums	
<a href="#">last_category_objects</a>		Recently categorized objects	type, id	
<a href="#">last_created_blogs</a>		Recently created blogs	nonums	
<a href="#">last_created_faqs</a>		Recently created FAQs?	nonums	
<a href="#">last_created_quizzes</a>		Recently created <a href="#">Quiz</a>	nonums	
<a href="#">directory_last_sites</a>	Last Sites	Recently added links in Directory.		
<a href="#">last_files</a>		Displays files uploaded since last visit	galleryId, nonums	
<a href="#">last_file_galleries</a>		Displays file galleries modified since last visit		
<a href="#">last_image_galleries</a>		Displays latest <a href="#">Image Gallery</a> modified since last visit	nonums	
<a href="#">last_images</a>		Lists most-recent image uploads.	galleryId, nonums	
<a href="#">last_images_th</a>		Shows thumbnails of most-recent image uploads.	galleryId	
<a href="#">last_modified_blogs</a>		Display blogs modified since last visit.	nonums	
<a href="#">last_modif_events</a>			calendarId, maxlen, nonums	
<a href="#">last_modif_pages</a>		Displays most recently edited <a href="#">wiki</a> pages	minor, maxlen, nonums, absurl	
<a href="#">last_modif_tracker_items</a>		Lists the tracker items added since last visit	name, trackerId, nonums	
<a href="#">last_submissions</a>		Lists the tracker items added since last visit.	nonums	
<a href="#">last_tracker_comments</a>			trackerId, itemId, nonums	
<a href="#">last_tracker_items</a>		Lists the last tracker items added.	status, name, trackerId, nonums	
<a href="#">last_visitors</a>		Lists recent logged-in visitors.	maxlen, nonums	

## "Best of" Modules

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">forums_best_voted_topics</a>		Top topics	nonums	
<a href="#">forums_most_commented_forums</a>			nonums	
<a href="#">forums_most_read_topics</a>			nonums	

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">forums_most_visited_forums</a>			nonums	
<a href="#">top_active_blogs</a>			nonums	
<a href="#">top_articles</a>		Lists <a href="#">Articles</a> by number of hits	nonums	
<a href="#">top_files</a>		Lists files by number of hits (downloads?)	nonums	
<a href="#">top_file_galleries</a>		Lists <a href="#">file galleries</a> by number of hits.	nonums	
<a href="#">top_forum_posters</a>		Lists most-active forum posters.	nonums	
<a href="#">top_games</a>		Lists <a href="#">Games</a> by number of hits.	nonums	
<a href="#">top_images</a>		Lists <a href="#">Images</a> by number of hits.	nonums	
<a href="#">top_images_th</a>		Shows thumbnails of most-viewed images.		
<a href="#">top_image_galleries</a>		Lists <a href="#">Image Gallery</a> pages by number of hits.	nonums	
<a href="#">top_objects</a>		Lists most-viewed objects (pages, galleries, etc.).	nonums	
<a href="#">top_pages</a>		Lists <a href="#">Wiki</a> pages by number of hits.	nonums	
<a href="#">top_quizzes</a>		Lists <a href="#">Quiz</a> by number of hits.	nonums	
<a href="#">top_visited_blogs</a>		Lists <a href="#">Blog</a> by number of hits.	nonums	
<a href="#">top_visited_faqs</a>		Lists <a href="#">FAQs?</a> by number of hits.	nonums	

## Help and Support Modules

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">assistant</a>	Tiki Assistant	Welcome message to admin of new Tiki installation.		
<a href="#">live_support</a>		Starts the live support feature		

## Search Modules

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<i>Module Name</i>	<i>Title</i>	<i>Short Description</i>	<i>Specific Params</i>	<i>tw release</i>
<a href="#">google</a>	Google Search	Web search		
<a href="#">search_box</a>		Search in entire site or by feature.		
<a href="#">search_new</a>		Search in entire site or by feature.		
<a href="#">search_wiki_page</a>		Search for wiki page name.		

## MyTiki Modules

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">user_blogs</a>		Lists "my Blogs" from the <a href="#">MyTiki</a> feature	nonums	
<a href="#">user_bookmarks</a>		Lists "my Bookmarks" from the <a href="#">MyTiki</a> feature		
<a href="#">user_image_galleries</a>		Lists "my Pages" from the <a href="#">MyTiki</a> feature	nonums	
<a href="#">user_pages</a>		Lists "my Pages" from the <a href="#">MyTiki</a> feature	nonums	
<a href="#">user_tasks</a>		Lists tasks from the <a href="#">MyTiki</a> feature		
<a href="#">messages_unread_messages</a>		Displays the number of new user messages		

## Miscellaneous Modules

Module Name <sup>1</sup>	Module Title <sup>2</sup>	Description	Parameters	Versions
<a href="#">events</a>	Current events	Displays calendar (?)		
<a href="#">menupage</a>		Displays a wiki page's content.	name	
<a href="#">num_submissions</a>				
<a href="#">old_articles</a>				
<a href="#">quick_edit</a>			title, templateId, submit, size, mod_quickedit_heading, categId	
<a href="#">wikistructure</a>		Dynamic navigation menu created on the fly from a given structre toc	id, maxdepth (in theory, same as <a href="#">toc</a> )	2.x, some params only in 3.0 like "maxdepth".
<a href="#">tail</a>		(used by devs)	file, title, max, reverse, filter	
<a href="#">upcoming_events</a>			calendarId, maxDays, maxlen, nonums, date_format	
<a href="#">action_similarcontent</a>	Similar Content	Display similar content to current object using FreeTags	contentType	5.0
<a href="#">poll</a>		Displays a poll in a wiki page	pollId	

1. As listed on Admin Modules page.
2. As displayed to visitors, English.



## *More information,*

Please see the following pages:

alias

- [ModulesDoc](#)
- [Modules](#)

# Meta Tags Configuration page

## Overview

Use this page to include <meta> tags within the <head></head> elements of your Tiki pages.

## Related Topics

- [Search engine optimization](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Meta Tags** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)

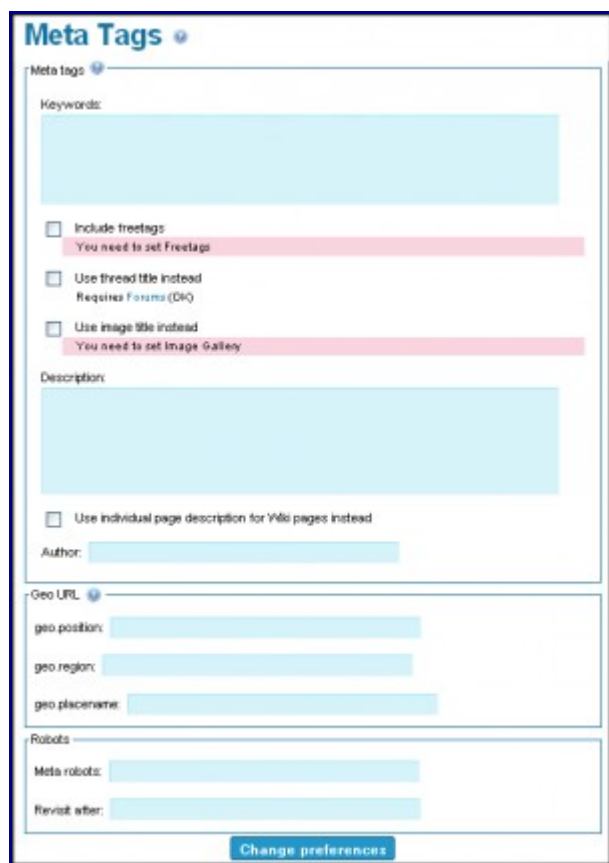
or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=meta>

## Note

Many search engines use this information to index your site and to format information on results pages.

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x3.x](#)



Meta Tags page

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Meta tags</b>		
Keywords	A list of key words (separated by commas) that describe your site.	
Include Freetags	If the freetags feature is enabled, use the freetags in the meta keywords for each page with freetags set. This, combined with freetags, allows individual pages on the site to carry different meta tags.	
Use Thread Title	Use the forum thread title in the meta title tag	
Use Image Title	Use the image title in the meta title tag	
Description	A short description of your site. Some search engines display this information with your site's listing.	
Use individual page description		
Author	The author of your site. Typically this will be the Admin or Webmaster.	
<b>Geo URL</b>		
geo.position	The latitude and longitude of the physical location of your Tiki. For example, the geo.position for <a href="http://www.whitehouse.gov">http://www.whitehouse.gov</a> in Washington, DC, USA is: 38.898748, -77.037684	

Setting	Description	Default
	See <a href="http://geotags.com/geo/geotags2.html">http://geotags.com/geo/geotags2.html</a> or <a href="http://geourl.org/">http://geourl.org/</a> for additional information, including instructions on calculating your geourl.	
geo.region	The <a href="#">ISO-3166-1 Country</a> and <a href="#">ISO-3166-2 Region code</a> for your location.	
geo.placename	A free-text description of your location.	
<b>Robots</b>		
Meta Robots	Specify how web-bots should index your site. Valid values include: INDEX or NOINDEX FOLLOW or NOFOLLOW	
Revisit after	Specify how often (in days) web-bots should visit your site.	

# Meta Tags Config

Use `ta>` tags to include metadata about your Tiki. This information is placed within the tags of your pages. Many search engines use this information to index your site and to format information on results pages.



Click the **Meta Tags** icon on the [Admin Panel](#) to display the Meta Tags Administration screen. Use the Meta Tags Administration panel to define the `ta>` tags included in the header information of each Tiki page.

Setting	Description
Meta Keywords	A list of key words (separated by commas) that describe your site.
Insert freetags in keyword list	If the freetags feature is enabled, use the freetags in the meta keywords for each page with freetags set. This, combined with freetags, allows individual pages on the site to carry different meta tags.
Use the thread title in Forum pages instead	Use the forum thread title in the meta title tag
Use the image title in Image gallery pages instead	Use the image title in the meta title tag
Meta Description	A short description of your site. Some search engines display this information with your site's listing.
Meta Author	The author of your site. Typically this will be the Admin or Webmaster.
geo.position	The latitude and longitude of the physical location of your Tiki. For example, the geo.position for <a href="http://www.whitehouse.gov">http://www.whitehouse.gov</a> in Washington, DC, USA is: 38.898748, -77.037684 See <a href="http://geotags.com/geo/geotags2.html">http://geotags.com/geo/geotags2.html</a> or <a href="http://geourl.org/">http://geourl.org/</a> for additional information, including instructions on calculating your geourl.
geo.region	The <a href="#">ISO-3166-1 Country</a> and <a href="#">ISO-3166-2 Region code</a> for your location.
geo.placename	A free-text description of your location.
Meta Robots	Specify how web-bots should index your site. Valid values include: INDEX or NOINDEX FOLLOW or NOFOLLOW
Revist after	Specify how often (in days) web-bots should visit your site.

To add additional `ta>` tags, you must manually update the **header.tpl** [template file](#).

## Troubleshooting

If you find that these preferences are not taking affect and not persisting - when you click "change settings" nothing happens and the flag is cleared on the next screen, you may find that the rows are missing from tiki preferences.

Ensure the following rows exist:

```
INSERT INTO `tiki_preferences` (`name`, `value`) VALUES ('metatag_freetags', 'y');
INSERT INTO `tiki_preferences` (`name`, `value`) VALUES ('metatag_threadtitle',
'y');
INSERT INTO `tiki_preferences` (`name`, `value`) VALUES ('metatag_imagetitle',
'y');
```

{FANCYTABLE}

For more information

- <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-html40/struct/global.html#h-7.4.4>

Alias

- [MetaTag](#)
  - [MetaTags](#)
  - [Meta Tag](#)
  - [Meta Tags](#)
  - [Meta Tags Config](#)
-

# Performance Admin page

## Overview

Use this page to fine-tune your Tiki to improve overall performance.

## Related Topics

- [Performance](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Performance** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=general>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Performance](#)
- [Bytecode Cache](#)
- [Wiki tab](#)
- [Performance Database](#)
- [Performance Memcache](#)
- [Performance Plugins](#)
- [Major Slowdown tab](#)
- [Sessions tab](#)

---

## *Performance Tab*

## Overview

Use this tab to configure Tiki's general [performance](#) features.

## Related Topics

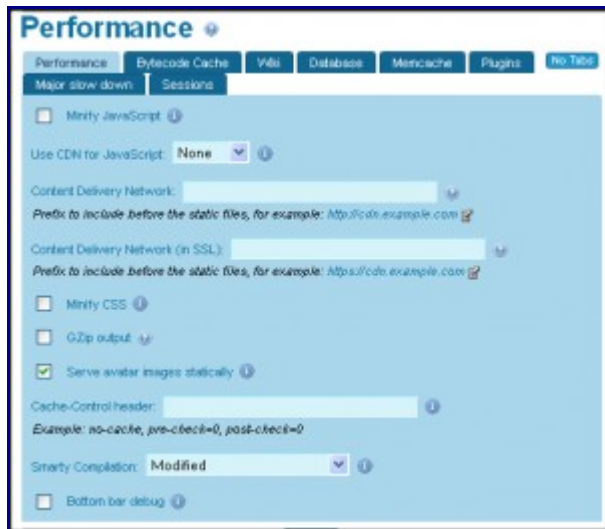
- [Performance](#)

## To Access

From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Performance** tab.

## [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x](#)



Performance tab

Setting	Description	Default
Minify JavaScript		
Use CDN for javascript:		
Content Delivery Network:	Prefix to include before the static files, for example: <a href="http://cdn.example.com">http://cdn.example.com</a>	
Content Delivery Network (in SSL):	Prefix to include before the static files, for example: <a href="https://cdn.example.com">https://cdn.example.com</a>	
Minify CSS		
Minify CSS into a single file		
GZip output		
Serve avatar images statically		
Cache-Control header:	Example: no-cache, pre-check=0, post-check=0	
Smarty Compilation:		
Bottom bar debug		



## Bytecode Cache Tab

### Overview

Use this tab to configure bytecoding caching.

### Related Topics

- [Performance](#)

### To Access

From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Performance** tab.

### Note

Using a bytecode cache (APC, XCache) is highly recommended for production environments.

## Wiki tab

### Overview

Use this tab to configure [performance](#) settings for the [wiki](#) feature

### Related Topics

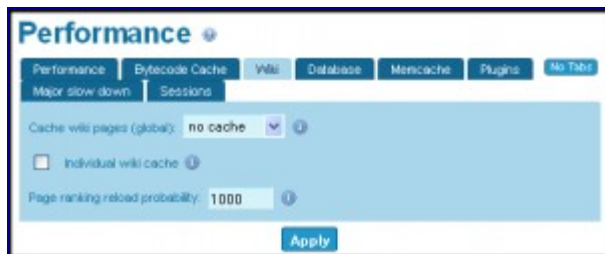
- [Performance](#)
- [Wiki](#)
- [Cache](#)

### To Access

From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Performance** tab.

### [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x](#)



### Wiki tab

Setting	Description	Default
Cache wiki pages (global)	Select the amount of time for which to cache all wiki pages Cached pages will display <b>cached</b> in the page title.	None
Individual wiki cache	If enabled, users can specify a page-specific cache time for each wiki page.	
Page ranking reload probability		1000

## Database tab

### Overview

Use this tab to configure [performance](#) settings for the Tiki database

### Related Topics

- [Performance](#)
- [Cache](#)

### To Access

From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Database** tab.

### No Tabs

### 6.x



### Database tab

Setting	Description	Default
Log SQL	If enabled, Tiki will log each SQL call to the database. <b>Note:</b> Enabling this option may affect overall performance.	
Log queries using more than (seconds):	Specify that Tiki will log only the SQL queries that exceed the indicated time.	

## Memcache tab

### Overview

Use this tab to configure [performance](#) settings when using PHP memcache

### Related Topics

- [Performance](#)
- [Cache](#)

### To Access

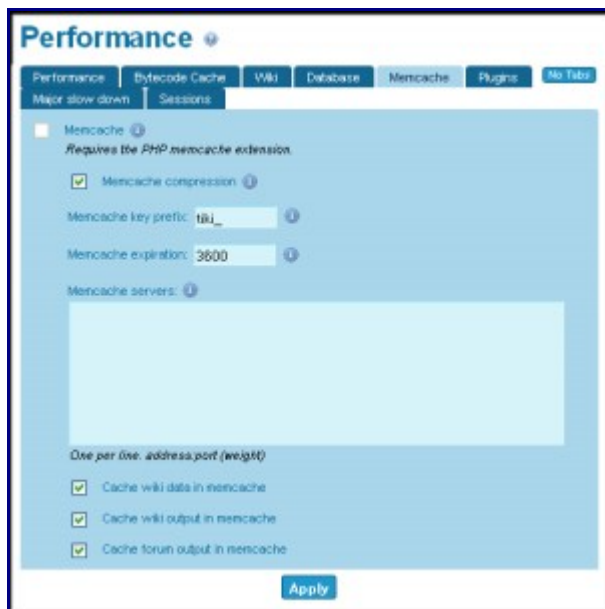
From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Database** tab.

### Note

This feature requires the PHP Memcache extension. See <http://php.net/manual/en/book.memcache.php> for details.

### [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x](#)



### Database tab

Setting	Description	Default
Memcache	<b>Note:</b> Requires the PHP memcache extension.	
Memcache compression		
Memcache key prefix:		tiki_
Memcache expiration:		3600
Memcache servers:	Add one server per line, in the format: <b>address:port (weight)</b>	
Cache wiki data in memcache		
Cache wiki output in memcache		
Cache forum output in memcache		

## Plugins tab

### Overview

Use this tab to configure caching for specific plugins

### Related Topics

- [Plugins](#)
- [Cache](#)
- [Snarf plugin](#)

### To Access

From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Plugins** tab.

### Note

In Tiki 6.x, this tab controls the [Plugin Snarf](#) plugin.

### No Tabs

### 6.x



### Database tab

}

Setting	Description	Default
Global cache time for the plugin snarf in seconds:	Number of seconds for which to cache the Snarf output	0

## Major Slowdown tab

### Overview

Use this tab to configure the Tiki options tha may affect your overall performance.

### Related Topics

- [Plugins](#)
- [Cache](#)
- [Performance](#)
- [Menus](#)

### To Access

From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Major Slow Down** tab.

### Note

The features on this tab have been reported to lower overall performance, especially in high-volume sites.

### No Tabs

### 6.x



## Major Slow Down tab

}

Setting	Description	Default
PHPLayers	Enable the <a href="#">PHPLayer</a> menu system. <b>Note:</b> PHPLayers was deprecated in Tiki5 — use CSS Menus instead.	
Plugin Sharethis	Enable the <a href="#">Share This plugin</a> .	

---

## Sessions tab

### Overview

Use this tab to configure the Tiki options tha may affect your overall performance.

### Related Topics

- [Sessions?](#)
- [Performance](#)

### To Access

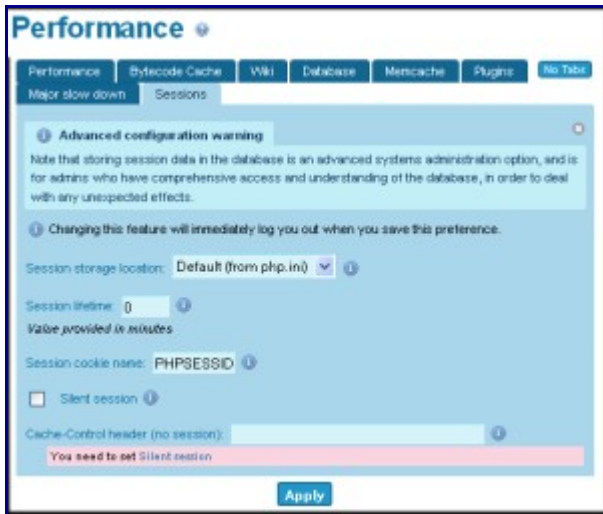
From the [Performance Admin Panel](#) page, click the **Major Slow Down** tab.

### Note

Changing settings on this tab will automatically log you out of your Tiki (after saving the preference).

### [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x](#)



## Sessions tab

}


Setting	Description	Default
Session storage location:	Select where Tiki stores the session information: as specified in the the php.ini file, the database, or memcache	php.ini
Session lifetime:	Number of minutes to maintain the session	0
Session cookie name:	Default cookie name for the session. This will override the default PHP configuration.	PHPSESSID
Silent session	If enabled, Tiki <i>will not</i> automatically start sessions.	
Cache-Control header (no session):	Custom HTTP header to use when no session is active (for example, Silent Session)	

# Security Administration

## Overview

Configure the basic site security and anti-spam options

## To Access

From the [Admin Home](#) page, click **Security**  .

## Related Topics

- [Plugin Security](#)
- <http://security.tikiwiki.org/>
- [security admin](#)

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- [General Administration](#)
- [General Preferences tab](#)
- [General Settings tab](#)
- [Navigation tab](#)
- [Date and Time tab](#)
  - [Date and Time Formats](#)
- [Change Admin Password tab](#)
- [Features Admin](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.10\)](#)
    - [Major features](#)
    - [Minor features](#)
    - [Site-wide features](#)
    - [Technical Features](#)
    - [User interface enhancement features](#)
    - [Experimental Features](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
    - [User Features](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.9.x\)](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
      - [User Features](#)
- [General Layout options](#)
  - [Layout-per-section Options](#)
- [Global Features](#)



- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Login Administration page](#)
- [General Preferences](#)
  - [Case Sensitivity](#)
  - [Remember Me](#)
  - [Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity](#)
  - [CustomFields](#)
- [LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4](#)
  - [Changes](#)
  - [Settings](#)
- [LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X](#)
  - [LDAP §fe70dcc7b334983be9d46331092db03d§ General Settings Overview](#)
- [LDAP Authentication tab](#)
  - [How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use](#)
  - [How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Unix](#)
    - [Active Directory](#)
    - [Zimbra LDAP](#)
  - [Debugging](#)
  - [Common Problems and Workarounds](#)
    - [Certificate Problems](#)
  - [How it works](#)
    - [Group membership and permissions](#)
    - [How anonymous binding works](#)
  - [LDAP §b22ccde9d2a65de3a894a23f4dfd1551§ Troubleshooting](#)
- [Aliases](#)
- [PAM Authentication tab](#)
  - [AuthPAM](#)
    - [Admin Documentation](#)
    - [Requirements for AuthPAM](#)
    - [Permissions!](#)
    - [Security Issues](#)
  - [Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki](#)
  - [Shibboleth step 2:Update Shibboleth](#)
- [Intro](#)

- [Mod phpcas](#)
  - [Notes from successful install \(with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4\)](#)
    - [Install](#)
- [CAS Authentication tab](#)
  - [Requirements for phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [Enabling phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration](#)
    - [phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options](#)
- [Community Administration](#)
- [User Features tab](#)
- [Community General Settings Tab](#)
  - [General Description](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Typical Uses](#)
- [Friendship Network tab](#)
- [Admin Profiles Page](#)
  - [For more information](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
- [Apply Profiles tab](#)
- [Profiles Advanced tab](#)
- [Look & Feel](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
      - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [Theme tab](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
      - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)

- [General Layout Options tab](#)
- [Shadow Layer tab](#)
- [Pagination Links tab](#)
- [UI Effects tab](#)
- [Custom CSS tab](#)
- [Miscellaneous tab](#)
- [Internationalization \(i18n\)](#)
  - [Overview](#)
- [Babelfish Links](#)
- [Customized String Translation tab](#)
  - [Feature Modules](#)
  - [User's Configuration Modules](#)
  - [Navigation Modules](#)
  - [Recent Changes Modules](#)
  - ["Best of" Modules](#)
  - [Help and Support Modules](#)
  - [Search Modules](#)
  - [MyTiki Modules](#)
  - [Miscellaneous Modules](#)
- [Modules](#)
  - [Modules vs. Plugins](#)
  - [Related pages](#)
- [Tiki Modules](#)
  - [More information.](#)
- [Meta Tags Config](#)
- [Meta Tags Configuration page](#)
- [Performance Admin page](#)
- [Performance Tab](#)
- [Bytecode Cache Tab](#)
- [Wiki tab](#)
- [Database tab](#)
- [Memcache tab](#)
- [Plugins tab](#)
- [Major Slowdown tab](#)
- [Sessions tab](#)
  - [General Security](#)
  - [Spam Protection](#)
  - [Search Results](#)
  - [Site Access](#)
  - [Tokens](#)

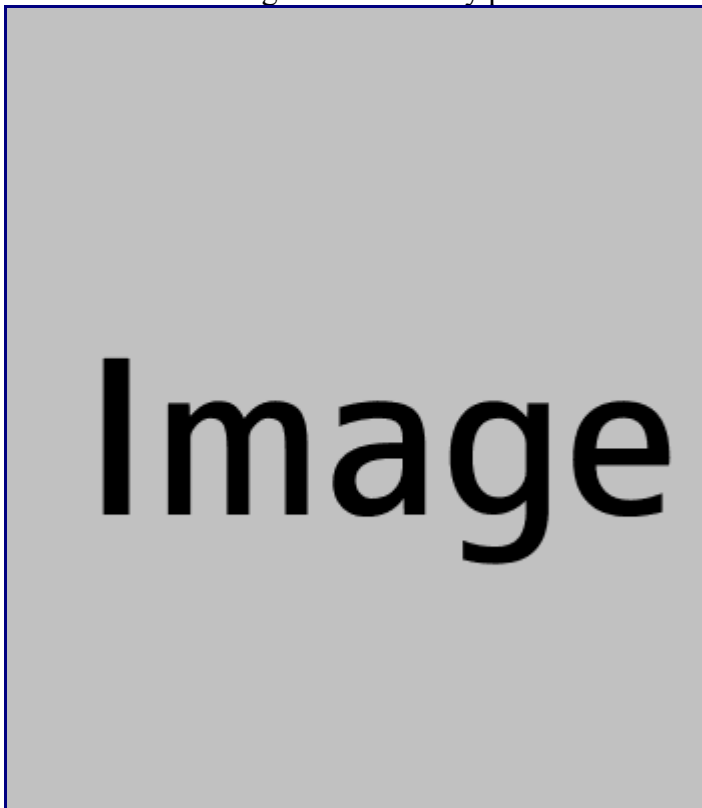
- [Clipperz Online Password Management](#)
- [Security Administration](#)

[No Tabs](#)

[6.x](#)

## General Security

Use this tab to configure site security preferences.




Tab name

Field	Description	Default
Smarty Security	If enabled, PHP coding <b>will not</b> be allowed in Smarty TPL templates.	Enabled
HTML Purifier	If enabled, Tiki will attempt to "sanitize" all generated pages and produce standards-compliant pages.	
Output Should be HTML Purified		

Field	Description	Default
Allow HTML in link text...	If enabled, you can include HTML coding in menu links	Disabled
Require confirmation if CSRF detected		
Protect against CSRF with a ticket		

## Spam Protection

Use this tab to enable anti-spam CAPTCHAs and protect email address links.



**Security**

General Security | **Spam protection** | Search results | Site Access | Tokens

Clipperz online password management

**Captcha**

☒ Anonymous editors must enter anti-bot code (CAPTCHA)

Word length of the captcha image: 6

Width of the captcha image in pixels: 180

Level of noise of the captcha image: 100

☐ Use ReCaptcha  
You will need to register at <http://www.google.com/recaptcha>

☒ Protect email against spam

☒ Add "rel=nofollow" on external links

☐ Banning system

Spam protection

See [Spam Protection](#).

## Search Results

## Site Access

## *Tokens*

## *Clipperz Online Password Management*

---

Table of contents:

---

## *Spam Protection tab*

### Related Topics

#### Overview

Use this tab to enable anti-spam CAPTCHAs and protect email address links.

- [Security](#)
- [Banning](#)
- Comment moderation

#### To Access

From the [Security Admin](#) page, click the **Spam Protection** tab.

#### Note

When enabled, the following Tiki features are protected:

- wiki page edits (starting in 1.9)
- wiki page comments (starting in 1.9)
- forum posts and replies (starting in 1.9)
- tracker item comments (starting in 2.0)
- freetags (starting in 2.0)
- calendar items (starting in 3.4, 4.2, and 5.0)
- newsletter subscriptions (starting in 3.4, 4.2, and 5.0)

## No Tabs

7.x, 6.x4.x3.x1.9.x



## Spam protection

Field	Description	Default
<b>CAPTCHA</b>		
Anonymous editors must input anti-bot code	Adds a CAPTCHA to any input from an Anonymous visitor (such as comments, wiki pages, and site registration).	Enabled
Word length...	Number of characters in the CAPTCHA image	6
Width...	Width, in pixels, of the CAPTCHA image	180
Level of noise	Specifies how difficult the CAPTCHA is to read. Higher number is more secure, but more difficult to read.	100
Use ReCaptcha	Instead of using the default Zend_Captcha implementation, Tiki can use CAPTCHAs from ReCaptcha	Disabled
Protect email...	Tiki will obfuscate email addresses, making it harder for spambots to steal email address that are displayed in pages, forums, blogs, and so on.	Enabled
Add "rel=nofollow"...	Adds <b>nofollow</b> parameter to all external links prevent robots and spiders from collecting external pages. See <a href="http://dev.tiki.org/wish1583">http://dev.tiki.org/wish1583</a> for more information.	Enabled
Banning System	Enables the Banning feature. Allows you to ban visitors by username and IP address	Disabled

/

in 4+: it was moved to tiki-admin.php?page=general , "General Preferences" section.

/

in 3.0, it as moved to: in tiki-admin.php?page=textarea

/

in 1.9.x: in tiki-admin.php?page=wiki

### ***Prevent automatic/robot registration***

in 1.9.x

In tiki-admin.php?page=login, you can activate "Prevent automatic/robot registration:". This will add Captcha code on the registration (tiki-register.php) page.

- 
- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
  - [General Administration](#)
  - [General Preferences tab](#)
  - [General Settings tab](#)
  - [Navigation tab](#)
  - [Date and Time tab](#)
    - [Date and Time Formats](#)
  - [Change Admin Password tab](#)
  - [Features Admin](#)
    - [Tiki sections and features \(1.10\)](#)
      - [Major features](#)
      - [Minor features](#)
      - [Site-wide features](#)
      - [Technical Features](#)
      - [User interface enhancement features](#)
      - [Experimental Features](#)
      - [Content Features](#)
      - [Administration Features](#)



- [User Features](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.9.x\)](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
      - [User Features](#)
- [General Layout options](#)
  - [Layout-per-section Options](#)
- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Login Administration page](#)
- [General Preferences](#)
  - [Case Sensitivity](#)
  - [Remember Me](#)
  - [Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity](#)
  - [CustomFields](#)
- [LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4](#)
  - [Changes](#)
  - [Settings](#)
- [LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X](#)
  - [LDAP \\$fe70dcc7b334983be9d46331092db03d\\$ General Settings Overview](#)
- [LDAP Authentication tab](#)
  - [How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use](#)
  - [How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Unix](#)
    - [Active Directory](#)
    - [Zimbra LDAP](#)
  - [Debugging](#)
  - [Common Problems and Workarounds](#)
    - [Certificate Problems](#)
  - [How it works](#)
    - [Group membership and permissions](#)
    - [How anonymous binding works](#)
  - [LDAP \\$b22ccde9d2a65de3a894a23f4dfd1551\\$ Troubleshooting](#)
- [Aliases](#)
- [PAM Authentication tab](#)

- [AuthPAM](#)
  - [Admin Documentation](#)
  - [Requirements for AuthPAM](#)
  - [Permissions!](#)
  - [Security Issues](#)
- [Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki](#)
- [Shibboleth step 2: Update Shibboleth](#)
- [Intro](#)
  - [Mod phpcas](#)
- [Notes from successful install \(with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4\)](#)
  - [Install](#)
- [CAS Authentication tab](#)
  - [Requirements for phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [Enabling phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration](#)
    - [phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options](#)
- [Community Administration](#)
- [User Features tab](#)
- [Community General Settings Tab](#)
  - [General Description](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Typical Uses](#)
- [Friendship Network tab](#)
- [Admin Profiles Page](#)
  - [For more information](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
- [Apply Profiles tab](#)
- [Profiles Advanced tab](#)
- [Look & Feel](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)

- [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [Theme tab](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
    - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [General Layout Options tab](#)
- [Shadow Layer tab](#)
- [Pagination Links tab](#)
- [UI Effects tab](#)
- [Custom CSS tab](#)
- [Miscellaneous tab](#)
- [Internationalization \(i18n\)](#)
  - [Overview](#)
- [Babelfish Links](#)
- [Customized String Translation tab](#)
  - [Feature Modules](#)
  - [User's Configuration Modules](#)
  - [Navigation Modules](#)
  - [Recent Changes Modules](#)
  - ["Best of" Modules](#)
  - [Help and Support Modules](#)
  - [Search Modules](#)
  - [MyTiki Modules](#)
  - [Miscellaneous Modules](#)
- [Modules](#)
  - [Modules vs. Plugins](#)
  - [Related pages](#)
- [Tiki Modules](#)
  - [More information.](#)
- [Meta Tags Config](#)
- [Meta Tags Configuration page](#)
- [Performance Admin page](#)
- [Performance Tab](#)
- [Bytecode Cache Tab](#)
- [Wiki tab](#)
- [Database tab](#)
- [Memcache tab](#)
- [Plugins tab](#)
- [Major Slowdown tab](#)

- [Sessions tab](#)
  - [General Security](#)
  - [Spam Protection](#)
  - [Search Results](#)
  - [Site Access](#)
  - [Tokens](#)
  - [Clipperz Online Password Management](#)
- [Security Administration](#)
  - [Prevent automatic/robot registration](#)
- [Spam Protection tab](#)

Alias

[antibot](#) | [anti-bot](#) | [captcha](#) | [Anti-bot Captcha](#) | [No follow](#)

---

Table of contents:

---

Table of contents:

---

Table of contents:

---

## ***Clipperz online password manager***

While Tiki has tons of [features](#) to manage all sorts of data, one that Tiki doesn't do is online [password management](#). You could of course save passwords in wiki pages which are permission protected, but they are not encrypted there. So anyone with access to your MySQL database can read the content of the pages.

You can either use the free service at [clipperz.com](http://clipperz.com) or run the Open Source [Clipperz Community Edition](#)

Clipperz is part of the [Tiki Suite](#) and some [basic integration between Tiki and Clipperz is planned](#).

alias

- [Password manager](#)

- [Password management](#)
  - [Password](#)
  - [Clipperz](#)
-

# Comments Admin page

## Overview

Use this page to configure the global (site-wide) comment options.

## Related Topics

- [Wiki](#)
- [Articles](#)
- [Inline comments](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Comments** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=comments>

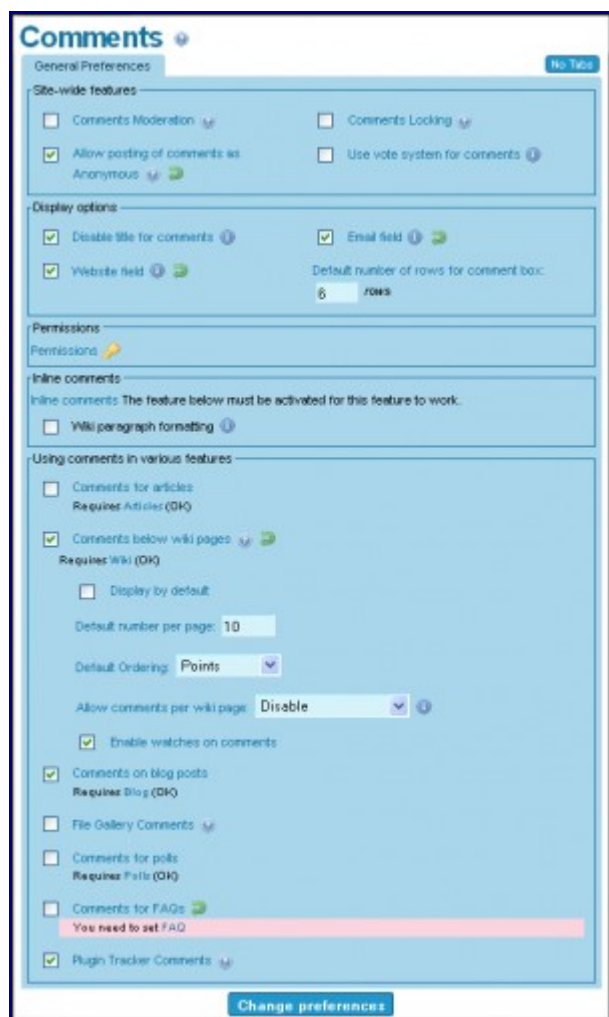
## Note

Comments need to be activated on a feature-by-feature basis. Comments can be used in:

- [Articles](#)
- [Wiki](#) pages
- [Blog](#) including individual blog posts
- [Image gallery](#)
- [File gallery](#)
- [Polls](#)
- [FAQs?](#)
- [Tracker items](#)

[No Tabs](#)

[6.x](#)



Comments page

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Site-wide Features</b>		
<a href="#">Comment Moderation</a>	If this feature is enabled, comments are queued for the moderator and are not published until it's approbation. The moderator can approve or reject comments either directly on the comments of the object (wiki page, blog post, ...), either on the 'Admin Comments' page.	
Comments Locking		
Allow posting of comments as Anonymous	If enabled, Anonymous users can post comments. Tiki will add a <a href="#">CAPTCHA</a> to protect from spambots. <b>Note:</b> You must still set the correct <a href="#">permissions</a>	
Use vote system for comments		
<b>Display Options</b>		

Setting	Description	Default
Disable title for comments	If enabled, there will <i>not</i> be a title field for comments	
Email field	If enabled, there will be a field for the visitor to include their email address.	
Website field	If enabled, there will be a field to include the visitor's website.	
Default number of rows for comment box:	Size (height) of the comment text area.	6
<b>Permissions</b>	Click to configure the <a href="#">Permissions</a> for comments.	
<b>Inline Comments</b>	To use <a href="#">inline comments</a> , you must enable the <b>Wiki Paragraph Formatting</b> option	
<b>Using comments in various features</b>	The list of <a href="#">features</a> will vary, depending on which you have enabled.	
Comments for articles	Enables comments for the <a href="#">Articles</a>	
	Enables comments for the <a href="#">Wiki</a> pages. If enabled, you can also configure:	
	* <b>Display by default:</b> The comments (and form) will be shown at the bottom of each wiki page.	
	* <b>Default number per page:</b> The default ( <b>10</b> ) number of comments shown at a time.	
Comments below wiki pages	* <b>Default Ordering:</b> The default order (Points, Newest first, or Oldest first) to display the comments	
	* <b>Allow comments per wiki page:</b> Allows you to override the availability of comments on a per-page basis.	
	* <b>Enable watches on comments:</b> If enabled, Tiki will sent <a href="#">watch</a> notifications when new comments added or updated.	
Comments on blog posts		
File Gallery Comments		
Default number per page:		
Default ordering:		
Comments for polls		
Comments for FAQs		
Plugin Tracker Comments		



# Comments

Comments are threaded replies to a content item.

New in Tiki6: [inline comments](#)

If you enable comments for some of the features of Tiki from the admin menu you will see links to show/hide comments and the number of comments for the object being viewed. In this section we'll explain comments for Tiki pages, everything will be the same for other Tiki features such as articles, blogs, polls, etc.

If you see this bar at the bottom of the central part of the screen (or somewhere else if the customization changed the appearance) then you can see/enter comments. Click the Show comments link to display comments and a form to post new comments (if you have the permission).

## *for beginners*

There are more than one place to switch on Comments for the Comments to work. For Comments to work at least three different steps are needed.

- I think first to take care of are the permissions for the Groups.
- Later each and every single Feature needs to be reviewed in detail to make sure Comments are ON for the intended Feature.
- Finally, when items are created under each Feature the Comments option needs to be checked ON for the particular created item.

There maybe more steps for some Features. I did not use all of the Features. With a little patience they

will all work  and we learn how to appreciate the fine tuning abilities in this software

package 

More documentation

# Alias

[comment](#)

---

# Feeds Admin page

## Overview

Use this page to configure the feeds generated by Tiki. By default, Tiki adds an RSS link for each feed in the footer:



Tiki-generated feeds

## Related Topics

- [External Feeds?](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Feeds** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)

or

Access **<http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=rss>**

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Feeds General Preferences](#)
- [Feeds Feeds](#)

## Note

To syndicate feeds from other sites, use the **Admin > External Feeds** menu option.

# Feeds

## Overview

A web feed is a summary of a Website's news, files, and other activities that it distributes or *syndicates* to other Websites and individual users. RSS is an acronym for "Rich Site Summary" (sometimes also used as *Really Simple Syndication*). Indeed, RSS files are a nearly painless way to syndicate news and articles from one site to many. For instance, RSS files can be used to gather Slashdot news and Freshmeat releases, and display them on your Tiki. RDF is the *Resource Description Framework*, see links below.

Tiki is remarkably flexible when it comes to feeds. It can *both* display external feeds from other sites in user modules and elsewhere *and* syndicate its activities (blogs, articles, forums, etc.) via feeds.

The configuration of internal feeds (data Tiki provides for others to include into their site) is explained in this page, and the configuration of external feeds is explained in [Feeds User](#).

This page is a mess. Configuration of external feeds should be merged with [Feeds User](#).

## Key Function and sub-features


Tiki has feeds for

- [Articles](#)
- [Blog](#)
- [Directory](#)
- [File gallery](#)
- [Forum](#)
- [Image gallery](#)
- [Map](#)
- [Wiki pages](#)
- [Calendar](#)
- [tracker](#)

You can find the feeds at the bottom bar (if it is switched on in admin menu):





You can click on any of those RSS icons (  ) at the bottom of the page in order to get the syndicated content from that Tiki section. Copy that URL and paste it in your favourite feed aggregator, email program, web site (provided they support collecting RSS feeds).

## *Setting up feeds*

### Creating Feeds

Tiki is set up to generate feeds from Blog, Image galleries, File galleries, the Calendar, Articles, Forums... -and more. To turn on the feature click Admin so you get the page with the little icons and choose the RSS icon. "Enable" the features you want to feed to the world. Save it and a little RSS icon will appear for users on pages where a feed is available.

Keep in mind that "outgoing" feeds of your own Tiki blogs, calendar, image and file galleries and articles *can also be displayed within your own Tiki!*(See Below for instructions.) This is a handy way to summarize content from one part of your site in another. I use it for file downloads where I've set up a file gallery -but rather than send people to the gallery I stick an RSS feed in the page for that group so they don't have to leave the page to download the file. No doubt you'll find more ways to use this powerful feature.

To use off site content:

### **Get your feed:**

Go to the news site you you want to get a feed from. Click through to their RSS link. Copy the URL of the link from your browser.

### **Subscribe to an external feed**

In Tiki, go to the Admin menu **down the left side of your page (not the page with all the icons)** and click on "External Feeds". Type a name for your feed (likely the name of the originating feed, say "New York Times") -this is so *you* can recognize it in the list you'll be making of all your feeds.

Enter a description if you like.

In the "url" box put the URL of the feed you copied in step one above.

Choose a "refresh rate": event calendar or news feeds might benefit from a fast refresh, - Blog maybe once a day -whatever floats your boat.

Click "show feed title" and "publish date" as these are handy pieces of info.

After you "Save" you'll see an external feeds list (with only one feed in it if this is your first one). This module tells Tiki where to pick up the feed (via the URL). **Write down the "ID" number** (likely "1" -again, if this is your first).

### Embed Your Feed In Your Wiki Pages Or Module

Here's the easy part: while editing any wiki page (or within any user module) stick this bit in to get your feed displaying:

```
{rss=1 max=5}
```

...where "1" is the feed ID and max=5 is the maximum number of feed items to display (I have no idea if there are limits to the max number but it's more than 5!)

Save your page and *voila!* You'll have a feed where you want it.

**Note that there are actually 2 different feed options. See the docs for details**

There is the RSS wiki plugin, which uses the format:

```
{RSS(id=>XXX,max=>YYY,date=>1,author=>1,desc=>1)} {RSS}
```

But there is also an RSS Smarty function, that uses a slightly different format:

```
{rss id=XXX, max=YYY date=1 author=1 desc=1}
```

To combine feeds, use the following syntax:

```
{rss id=1:2:3:4 max=yyy date=1 author=1 desc=1}
```

(This needs more explanation)

## *More information*

See this video (below) for more information on feeds in general, or click on any of the links below for more information on feeds in Tiki:

- [Feeds General Preferences](#)
- [Feeds Feeds](#)

"RSS in Plain English"

Flash player not available.

## *Alias*

- [RSS](#)
- 

## *Feeds General Preferences tab*

### Overview

Use this tab to configure the global options for *all* RSS feeds generated by Tiki.

### Related Topics

- [rss](#)

### To Access

From the [Feeds Admin](#) page, click the **General Preferences** tab.

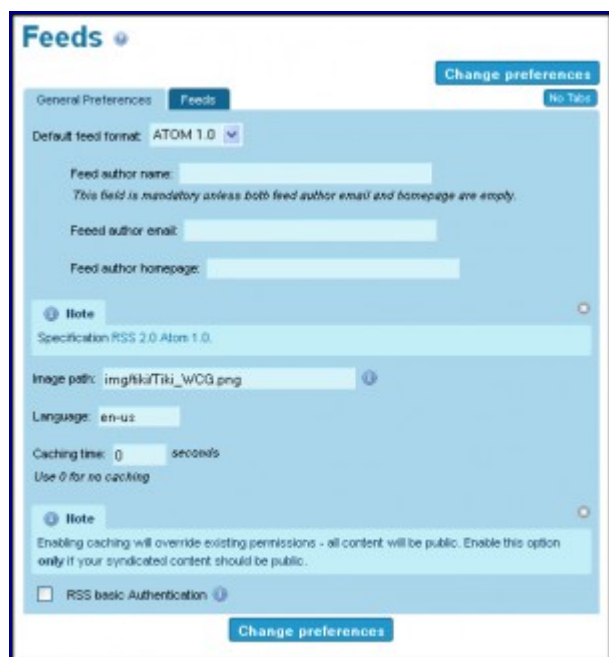
### Note

For details on the feed specifications, see:

- RSS: <http://blogs.law.harvard.edu/tech/rss>
- ATOM: <http://www.atomenabled.org/developers/syndication/atom-format-spec.php>

### No Tabs

### 6.x



Feeds page

Setting	Description	Default
Default feed format:	Select the format for feeds generated by Tiki: ATOM or RSS	ATOM 1.0
Feed author name:	Default author of each item in the feed. <b>Note:</b> This field is mandatory <i>unless</i> both feed author email and homepage are empty.	
Feed author email:	Email of the author of each item in the feed.	
Feed author homepage:	Homepage (url) of the author of each item in the feed.	
Feed editor email:	Email of the editor of the feed.	
Feed webmaster email:	Email of the webmaster of the feed.	
Image path:	Image (GIF, PNG or JPG) to display on the feed's page.	img/tiki/Tiki_WC G.png
Language:	Default language of the items of the feed.	en-us
Caching time:	Time (in seconds) to cache the feed content. Use 0 for no caching. <b>Note:</b> Enabling caching will override existing permissions - all content will be public. Enable this option only if your syndicated content should be public.	0
RSS basic Authentication	If enabled, basic HTTP authentication will be used if the viewer does not have permission to the feed.	



# Feeds

## Overview

Use this tab to enable the specific Tiki-generated feeds.

## Related Topics

- [RSS](#)
- [Feeds](#)

## To Access

From the [Feeds Admin](#) page, click the **Feeds** tab.

## No Tabs

## 6.x5.x

The screenshot shows the 'Feeds' tab in the Tiki administration interface. It features a list of checkboxes for enabling different types of feeds. The 'Articles' feed is currently enabled, while others like 'Blogs', 'Image galleries', 'File galleries', 'Wiki', 'Forums', 'Trackers', 'Calendar events', 'Directories', 'Maps', 'Shoutbox', and 'Tags' are disabled. Each disabled feed has a red error message indicating that a specific configuration is missing (e.g., 'You need to set Articles', 'You need to set Image Gallery', etc.). The interface includes input fields for 'Title', 'Article RSS Description', 'Learn more for feed', 'Maximum number of items to display' (set to 10), 'Show Author', and 'Homepage URL'. A 'Change preferences' button is at the bottom.

## Feeds tab

For each Tiki feed, you can configure the following options:

Setting	Description	Default
Title	The title (name) of the feed.	Tiki RSS Feed for <i>feature</i>
Description:	Description of the feed.	
Maximum number of items to display:		10
Show Author	Include the author of the feed.	
Homepage URL:	Include the homepage (url) of the feed.	



## Feeds Admin

The available feeds and their meanings:

Feed	Description
Articles	This feed lists the last n articles in your site.
Blogs	This feed lists the last n posts to blogs in your site.
Individual Blog	This feed lists the last posts to a given Blog. (There's a feed for each weblog.)
Image galleries	This feed lists the last images uploaded to image galleries (any) in your site
Individual Image galleries	This feed lists the last uploaded images to a given gallery. (There's a feed for each gallery.)
File galleries	This feed lists the last n files uploaded to file galleries (any) in your site.
Individual file galleries	This feed lists the last files uploaded to a given file gallery. (There's a feed for each file gallery.)
Wiki	This feed lists the last changes to the Wiki.
Forums	Lists the last n topics to the Forums (all the forums)
Individual Forum	List the last n topics to a given forum.
Trackers	This feed lists the last (or first) n items for a tracker
Individual trackers items	This feed lists the updates to a given tracker.
Calendar	List the last n items in the given calendar
Directories	List the last n sites new in all directories.
Map files	List the last n mapfiles new on the tiki site.

{FANCYTABLE}

---

# Connect page

## Overview

Use this page to submit your site to the Tiki directory.

## Related Topics

- [Tiki Community](#)
- [Tiki Sites](#)
- [Featured Tiki Sites](#)

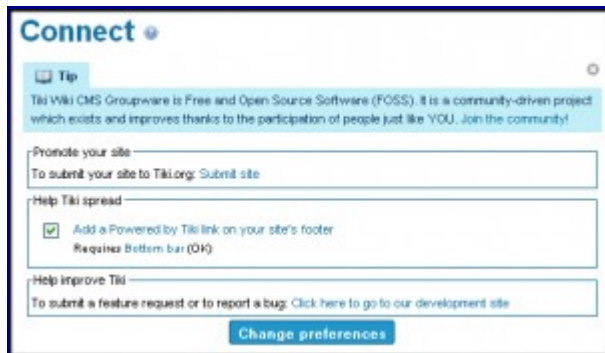
## To access

Click the **Connect** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=connect>

## Note

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware is Free and Open Source Software (FOSS). It is a community-driven project which exists and improves thanks to the participation of people just like YOU!



The screenshot shows the 'Connect' page with a blue header. Below the header is a 'Tip' box with a light blue background and a small 'Tip' icon. The tip text reads: 'Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware is Free and Open Source Software (FOSS). It is a community-driven project which exists and improves thanks to the participation of people just like YOU. Join the community!'. Below the tip box are three sections: 'Promote your site' with a text input field and a 'Submit site' button; 'Help Tiki spread' with a checked checkbox and the text 'Add a Powered by Tiki link on your site's footer' and 'Requires Bottom bar (OK)'; and 'Help improve Tiki' with a text input field and a 'Click here to go to our development site' link. At the bottom of the form is a 'Change preferences' button.

## Connect page

Field	Description
To submit your site to Tiki.org: Submit site	Click <b>Submit site</b> to submit your site to the Tiki directory.
Add a Powered by Tiki link on your site's footer	If enabled, Tiki adds a <b>Powered by Tiki</b> link in the site's bottom area.

# Advanced Ratings page

## Overview

Use this page to configure a "rating" system to evaluate tracker items or wiki pages.

## Related Topics

- [E-democracy system](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)
- [Advanced Rating](#)

## To access

Click the **Ratings** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

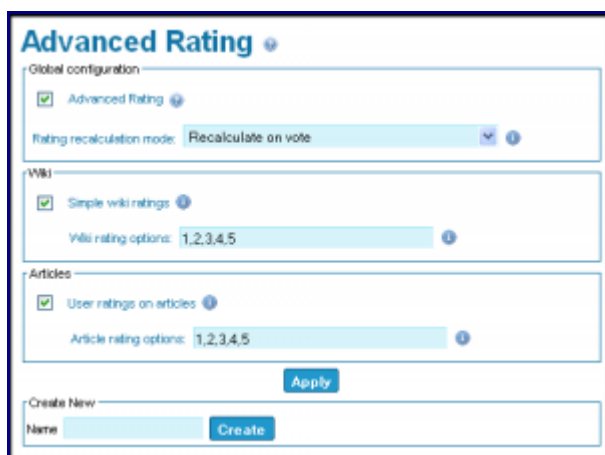
Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=rating>

## Note

Tiki currently supports sorting through advanced rating in:

- [Articles](#)
- [Wiki](#)
- [Comments](#)

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x5.x](#)



The screenshot shows the 'Advanced Rating' configuration page. It has a title bar with 'Advanced Rating' and a help icon. Below the title bar are three main sections: 'Global configuration', 'Wiki', and 'Articles'. The 'Global configuration' section has a checkbox for 'Advanced Rating' which is checked, and a dropdown for 'Rating recalculation mode' set to 'Recalculate on vote'. The 'Wiki' section has a checkbox for 'Simple wiki ratings' which is checked, and a text input for 'Wiki rating options' with the value '1,2,3,4,5'. The 'Articles' section has a checkbox for 'User ratings on articles' which is checked, and a text input for 'Article rating options' with the value '1,2,3,4,5'. At the bottom of the configuration sections is an 'Apply' button. Below the configuration sections is a 'Create New' section with a text input for 'Name' and a 'Create' button.

Advanced Ratings page

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Global configuration</b>		
Advanced Rating	Enable the internal rating system, used for calculating values from trackers, articles, or other features.	
	Determines when and how rating aggregates are recalculated: * <b>On vote</b> (default): indicates that the score for the object should be recalculated every time a vote is performed. This option is suitable for sites with lower volumes and relatively simple calculation methods when ratings are used. * <b>Random on load</b> : will cause a few scores to be calculates on page load on a random basis (odds and count can be configured to adapt to site load). This option is suitable for calculation rules involving time that must be recalculated even if no new votes occurred. * <b>Random on vote</b> is similar to random on load, but will recalculate multiple scores (not necessarily including the current object) when a vote is performed. It is suitable for similar situations. The best option will depend on site load. * <b>Periodic</b> : is the best option for heavy load sites, making sure all calculations are done outside the web requests. A cron job must be set-up manually by the site's administrator. A sample script is available at the end of this page. Depending on the site load, some options may be better than others; on large volume sites, we recommend <b>cron job</b> . The <b>Recalculate on vote</b> recalculation may be inaccurate if rating calculation depends time.	
Rating recalculation mode:		Recalculate on vote
Recalculation odds (1 in X):		
Recalculation count:		
<b>Wiki</b>		
Simple wiki ratings	Enable a simple rating bar at the top of each wiki page.	
Wiki rating options:	List of options for the simple wiki ratings.	1,2,3,4,5
<b>Articles</b>		
User ratings on articles	Enable a simple rating bar at the top of each articles page.	
Article rating options:		

The feature must first be enabled through this same administration panel. Along with the feature, a few options are available. Among them, the score recalculation period must be defined. These are the available options:

- **On vote (default)** indicates that the score for the object should be recalculated every time a vote is performed. This option is suitable for sites with lower volumes and relatively simple

calculation methods when ratings are used.

- **Random on load** will cause a few scores to be calculated on page load on a random basis (odds and count can be configured to adapt to site load). This option is suitable for calculation rules involving time that must be recalculated even if no new votes occurred.
- **Random on vote** is similar to random on load, but will recalculate multiple scores (not necessarily including the current object) when a vote is performed. It is suitable for similar situations. The best option will depend on site load.
- **Periodic** is the best option for heavy load sites, making sure all calculations are done outside the web requests. A cron job must be set-up manually by the site's administrator. A sample script is available at the end of this page.

For the random options, the odds of recalculating must be specified as a dice roll. For each occurrence of a recalculation, a limit to how many scores can be calculated must be specified to avoid the hang-up effect on the page load.

The value ranges for each object type can also be specified through the administration panels.

The common *sort\_mode* parameter to lists can be used to activate sorting using advanced ratings. To do so, the sort mode must be set to *adv\_rating\_X\_asc* or *adv\_rating\_X\_desc* where *X* is the ID of the rating configuration. The default sort can also be set to advanced ratings in the administration panel where applicable.

## Calculation configuration

From the administration panel, new calculations can be added. Initially, only the name is required. When created, the calculation will contain suitable default values.

For wiki pages:

Thus, visitors can provide feedback like:

- Did this page help you solve the issue?
- Was this page easy to understand?

alias

- [Ratings](#)
-



# Advanced Rating

Introduced in [Tiki5](#), the advanced rating feature allows for more control over the aggregation of scores.

Rating methods are defined globally and will be used for all supported objects. They are defined through the **Advanced Rating** administration panel ([tiki-admin.php?page=rating](#)). Multiple methods can be created. If a method contains type-specific calculations, it will be ignored when performing the calculation.

Features currently supporting sorting through advanced rating:

- [Articles](#)
- [Wiki](#)
- [Comments](#)

## *Sorting items according to advanced rating*

Note that the sort mode to use when needing to sort by advanced rating is either `adv_rating_xx_asc` or `adv_rating_xx_desc`, where `xx` is the `ratingConfigId`.

Feature request: Can we make this take the name of the config instead of the `ratingConfigId` as well?

## *Set-up*

By default, each calculated value is kept for 1 hour (3600 seconds). This limit does not apply when recalculating on vote, but is used for every other technique to avoid recalculating the same scores over and over again.

The calculation is defined as a small piece of code, similar to functional languages, which is very close to mathematical representations. Creating custom formulas is expected to require some mathematical skills. However, this documentation should provide examples for most frequent cases.

The editor in the administration panel performs extensive validation and will make it impossible to save the formula unless it can be evaluated. Checks are performed for:

- Syntax errors
- Unknown functions

- Missing arguments
- Invalid argument values
- Unknown input variables

### Default formula

```
(rating-average (object type object-id))
```

It can be altered to limit the vote consideration to a limited time span, 30 days for example.

### Recent votes only

```
(rating-average  
  (object type object-id)  
  (range (mul 3600 24 30))  
)
```

In the language, spaces do not matter. Only the parenthesis indicate structure. **rating-average** is a function that fetches the ratings for a given object. *type* and *object-id* are standard variables fed when calculating a rating. **object** and **range** are configuration options of the function.

**mul** is a mathematical function. (mul 3600 24 30) is equivalent to 3600\*24\*30.

The functions can be combined in various ways. For example, we could calculate a score that considers the votes from the past month, but gives extra emphasis on the recent ones.

### Combined vote duration

```
(add  
  (rating-average  
    (object type object-id)  
    (range (mul 3600 24 30)))  
  (rating-average  
    (object type object-id)  
    (range (mul 3600 24 7)))  
)
```

Even though the votes are 1-5, the final score can be on an entirely different scale. The language is also extensible if the calculation needs to be combined with other factors or weight. See [Rating Language](#).

All available options are documented in the following section.

## Reference

### *mul (Multiply)*

Performs a simple multiplication accepting multiple input values.

Examples

```
(mul 3 4)
-> 12
(mul (mul 3 4) 5)
-> 60
(mul 3 4 5)
-> 60
(mul 4 0.5)
-> 2
```

### *add (Sum)*

Performs a simple sum accepting multiple input

Examples

```
(add 3 4)
-> 7
(add (add 3 4) 5)
-> 12
(add 3 4 5)
-> 12
(add 4 0.5)
-> 4.5
```

### *rating-average and rating-sum*

The rating functions calculate the score from the rating history table. Each rating performed on the site is kept in the database and can be used to calculate custom ratings on. The various options allow to adapt the score calculation to reflect the importance on the site, whether it is to support quality improvement on documentation or to rank incoming data on a feed aggregator.

- **object**, mandatory and always (*object type object-id*) in this context.
- **range**, to limit how long votes are considered. Argument is provided as a number of seconds.
- **ignore**, with *anonymous* as an argument to only consider votes from registered users.
- **keep**, to only consider one vote per visitor. Unless the option is present, all of the votes are taken into account. The option can be either *latest* or *oldest* to indicate which one to keep.
- **revote** can be specified if **keep** is specified. Indicates the time period required between votes.

For example, users could be allowed to vote more than once per day, but only their latest vote each day would be considered, if revote is set to mul(24 3600). If the user voted yesterday as well as today, both votes will be counted.

### ***str***

Generates a static string when needed and the processor attempts to process the string as a variable. Any arguments will be concatenated using spaces.

#### Examples

```
(str hello-world)
-> "hello-world"
(str hello world)
-> "hello world"
(str
  hello
  world
  foobar)
-> "hello world foobar"
```

### ***article-info***

Pulls information from an article to include in the calculation. The first argument must always resolve to 'article'. If any other value, the calculation will be skipped for the evaluated object, making the formula type-specific.

Available properties:

- rating, the static rating attached to the article
- view-count
- age-second
- age-hour
- age-day
- age-week
- age-month

#### Examples

```
(article-info type object-id rating)
(article-info (str article) 42 age-month)
```

## *attribute*

Pulls information from the generic object attributes.

### Examples

```
(attribute
  (object type object-id)
  (property tiki.proposal.accept)
)
-> [value for page in a rating calculation]
(attribute
  (object (str wiki page) 14)
  (property tiki.proposal.accept)
  (default 0)
)
-> [value for page id 14]
```

## *Appendix*

### Cron job

**<?php**

```
chdir('/path/to/tikiroot');

require_once 'tiki-setup.php';
require_once 'lib/rating/ratinglib.php';

$ratinglib->refresh_all();
```

## Related

- [Rating Revamp](#)
-

# Wiki Admin page

## Overview

Use this page to configure the [wiki](#) settings.

## Related Topics

- [Wiki](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Wiki** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=wiki>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Wiki General Preferences](#)
- [Wiki Features](#)
- [Wiki Page Staging and Approval](#)
- [Wiki Page Listings](#)
- [Wiki Tools](#)

## Note

In Tiki 2 (and earlier) *all* Wiki options were on a single tab.

---

## *Wiki General Preferences tab*

## Overview

Use this tab to set the primary wiki options.

## Related Topics

- [Wiki](#)
- [Wiki Syntax](#)

## To Access

From the [Administer Wiki](#) page, click the **General Preferences** tab.

No Tabs

6.x5.x4.x3.x2.x1.9.x



Wiki

General Preferences

Features

Staging & Approval

Page Listings

Tools

No Tab

Home page:

Page display

☐ Description
 ☒ Display page name as page title
 ☐ Display page name above page
 ☐ Page ID
 ☐ Page version

List authors:

☒ Allow override per page
 ☐ Display showhide icon displayed before headings

Wiki action bar location:

Wiki navigation bar location:

Wiki top line location:

Wiki buttons:

☒ Encourage contribution to wiki pages by anonymous

Page name

Wiki link format:

Strict will only be basic characters like a-z and 0-9. If you have accented or special characters in page names, you should not use strict.
 ☐ Prevent special characters in page names

Page name display stripper:

Edit

☐ Content templates
 ☒ Warn on edit conflict

Edit idle timeout:  minutes

☐ Undo
 ☐ Save draft
 

Requires Ajax (DHQ)

You need to set Ajax Ajax

☐ Footnotes
 ☐ Allow HTML
 ☒ Warn before page lock timeout
 ☒ Edit section
 

Edit section level:

☒ Toggle display of section and plugin edit icons
 ☒ Allow minor edits

Note

Minor edits do not flag new content for translation and do not send watch notifications (unless "Watch minor edits" is enabled).  
 Only user groups granted the tiki\_p\_minor permission (and admins) will be able to save minor edits when this is enabled.

Force and limit categorization to within subtree of:

Requires Category (DHQ)

☐ Log bytes changes (+/-) in action logs  
 May impact performance
 ☐ Mandatory edit summary on wiki pages

Change preferences

General Preferences tab

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (<http://tiki.org>)

Page 193

Copyright © by Tiki Software Community Association under a Commons Attribution - ShareAlike License.

Setting	Description	Default
Home Page	Landing page used for wiki when no page is specified. The page will be created if it does not exist.	HomePage
<b>Page display</b>		
Page Description	If enabled a description can be entered when editing a page and descriptions will be displayed below the page name when viewing a page.	
Page Name as Page Title	Display the page name at the top of each page as page title. If not enabled, the page content should be structured to contain a header. If disabled no title will be displayed (and it will be hard to know what page you are editing!).	Enabled
Display page name above page	If enabled, Tiki will display the page name in small text at the top of each page (above the page's content)	
Page ID	If enabled, the page's unique numeric ID will be displayed when viewing the page.	
Page version	Display the page version information when viewing the page. As of Tiki 5.0, this information is only displayed when the List authors preference is enabled.	
List Authors	Changes the list format used to display the authors of the page. Listing options include last modification date/time and page version (if the Page version preference is enabled).	
Allow override per page	If enabled, you can override the <b>List Authors</b> setting on a per-page basis.	
Show/hide heading icon displayed before the heading:	For use with the <b>!!-</b> or <b>!!+</b> syntax. Checking will display the showhide switch at the left of the heading, otherwise it displays below.	
Wiki action bar location:	Specify the location (Top, Bottom, or Both) of the edit buttons (such as Save, Preview, and Cancel) when editing wiki pages.	Bottom
Wiki navigation bar location:	Specify the the locaiton of the wiki pagination links (next and previous) when using the <b>...page...</b> <a href="#">wiki syntax</a> .	Bottom
Wiki top line location:		
Wiki buttons:	Specify the location (Top, Bottom, or Neither) of the wiki-specific options (such as Backlinks, Page Description, and so on)	Top
Encourage contribution to wiki pages by anonymous	If enabled, the Edit link will be available on <i>all</i> wiki pages. If the user does not have the necessary permission, he will be prompted to login/register first.	
<b>Page Name</b>		
Wiki link format:	Used to control recognition of Wiki links using the two parenthesis Wiki link syntax: ((page name)) . * <b>Complete</b> : allows anything at all but is not guaranteed to be bug-free or secure. Note that this only affects the Wiki syntax ((page name)) . It does not affect recognition of the Wiki naming convention of Smashed words starting with capital letters (example: ThisIsSomePage). * <b>Strict</b> : Only be basic characters like a-z and 0-9. If you have accented or special characters in page names, you should not use strict.	Complete
Prevent special characters in page		

Setting	Description	Default
names		
Page name display stripper:		
<b>Edit</b>		
Content templates	If enabled, users editing a Wiki page can select a template for the page. A template is a pre-defined content for a Wiki page. See <a href="#">Content Templates</a> to learn how to create templates for wiki pages.	
Warn on edit conflict	If enabled then when a user is editing a page the edit button will be colored red and the name of the user editing the page will be displayed as a tooltip. If the user saves or cancels his or her edit or if the indicated amount of time passes the edit button will be displayed normally. This feature is useful to prevent collisions when editing pages.	
Edit idle timeout: minutes	Select the amount of time (in minutes) after which a user's edit session will expire. If the user does not save or preview their work, it will be lost. Tikiwiki will display a "countdown time" in the user's browser and display an alert when only a minute remains.	
Save draft		
Footnotes	If enabled logged users can write personal footnotes when editing a page. The footnotes will be displayed only to the user who edited them immediately below the Wiki page. This can be used as a good way to let users make personal notes and observations about pages.	
Allow HTML		
Warn before page lock timeout		
Edit section		
Edit section level:		
Toggle display of section and plugin edit icons		
Allow minor edits	Minor edits do not flag new content for translation and do not send watch notifications (unless "Watch minor edits" is enabled). Only user groups granted the tiki_p_minor permission (and admins) will be able to save minor edits when this is enabled. Permission	
Reset to default		
Force and limit categorization to within subtree of:	Require users to select a category when editing/saving wiki pages.	
Log bytes changes (+/-) in action logs	May impact performance	
Mandatory edit summary on wiki pages	Require users to enter a comment/description when editing and saving wiki pages.	

Setting	Description	Default
---------	-------------	---------

**Fieldset or section**

Field name	Description	Value
------------	-------------	-------

Setting	Description	Default
---------	-------------	---------

**Fieldset or section**

Field name	Description	Value
------------	-------------	-------

Setting	Description	Default
---------	-------------	---------

**Fieldset or section**

Field name	Description	Value
------------	-------------	-------

Setting	Description	Default
---------	-------------	---------

**Fieldset or section**

Field name	Description	Value
------------	-------------	-------



From the [Tiki Config](#) Panel, click the Wiki icon to display its settings panel, the top of which appears like so:



## Dumps

A **dump** is a snapshot of your wiki pages in XHTML format. You can generate and download dumps for backups, off-line browsing, distribution on CD, presentations, and so on. Tiki stores your dumps in the **../dump** directory in TAR format. Note that as of version 5.0, a **dump** does not include file attachments linked to by wiki pages.

You must enable the [Dump](#) option to use this feature.

## ***Wiki Features tab***

### **Overview**

Use this tab to enable and configure specific wiki features.

### Related Topics

- [Wiki](#)

### **To Access**

From the [Administer Wiki](#) page, click the **Features** tab.

### **Note**

In Tiki 2 (and earlier) all features were on a single page.

### No Tabs

[6.x5.x4.x3.x2.x1.9.x](#)

Wiki

General Preferences
Features
Staging & Approval
Page Listings
Tools
No Tabs

☐ Sandbox

☒ Comments below wiki pages  
Requires Wiki (OK)  
Manage comment settings

☒ Attachments  

☐ Display by default

Storage:  
☒ Store in database  
☐ Store in directory  
Path (if stored in directory):

Manage attachments

☐ Dumps

☒ Pictures  

☒ Use File Galleries to store pictures

Remove unused pictures

☐ Export

☐ Wikinords

☒ History  

Maximum number of versions:
0 for unlimited versions

Never delete versions younger than: 1 days

☐ Display IP address

Default diff style: Side-by-side diff

☐ History all instead of only page data, description, and change comment

☐ View page contributions by author  
Requires History (OK)

☐ Discuss pages on forums  
Requires Forums (OK)

☒ View source

☒ Rating  
Requires Prefs (OK)

☐ Simple wiki ratings

☒ Backlinks  

Name length:
Requires Backlinks (OK)

☐ Semantic links  
Requires Backlinks (OK)

Redirect pages using these prefix also semantic links:  
Requires Redirect to similar wiki page (OK)

☐ Similar (like pages)  

☐ Similar pages only listed in same language  
Requires Multilingual (OK)

☐ Rankings

☒ Structures  

☒ Open page as structure

☐ Make structure from page

☐ Categorize structure pages together

☐ Create webhelp from structure

☐ A page can occur multiple times in a structure

Tiki Wiki CMS Groupware (<http://tiki.org>)

Page 198

Copyright © by Tiki Software Community Association under a Commons Attribution - ShareAlike License.

## Features tab

Setting	Description	Default
Sandbox	The <a href="#">Sandbox page</a> allows users to practice their Wiki page editing skills. The Sandbox is a special page where everybody has write permission and no history is saved.	
Comments below wiki pages		
Requires Wiki		
Manage comment settings		
Attachments		
Display by default		
Storage:		
Store in database		
Store in directory		
Path (if stored in directory):		
Manage attachments		
Dumps	If enabled, <a href="#">dumps</a> can be created and saved.	
Tag for current wiki:		
Restore wiki to tag:		
Remove a tag:		
Generate dump Download last dump		
Pictures		
Permission		
Use File Galleries to store pictures		
Remove unused pictures		
Export	If enabled, users can <b>missing parameter for aname</b> individual pages and structure pages content as a file (requires <a href="#">tiki_p_admin_wiki permission</a> ).	
Permission Export Wiki Pages		
WikiWords		
Accept dashes and underscores in WikiWords		
Link plural WikiWords to their singular forms		
History	If enabled, users (with <a href="#">permission</a> ) can see the <a href="#">history</a> of each Wiki page.	
Maximum number of		

Setting	Description	Default
versions::		
0 for unlimited versions		
Never delete versions		
younger than: days		
Display IP address		
Default diff style:		
History all instead of only page data, description, and change comment		
View page contributions by author		
Requires History		
Discuss pages on forums		
Forum for discussion:		
View source	If enabled users (with <a href="#">permission</a> ) can see the Wiki syntax of the Wiki page.	
Rating	This allows you to add a poll from <a href="#">polls feature</a> to any wiki page. The poll is unique to the page, created from a "poll template" which is created in the Polls feature: set a poll's 'active' drop-down to "template". You may have to adjust your groups <a href="#">permissions</a> for <code>tiki_p_wiki_view_ratings</code> and <code>tiki_p_wiki_vote_ratings</code> .	
Simple wiki ratings		
Wiki rating options:		
Backlinks	Allows users to view a list of pages, called backlinks, that link to the current page.	
Name length:		
Semantic links		
Redirect pages using these prefix alias semantic links:		
Similar (like pages)	If enabled, users can see a <a href="#">listing of pages named similarly</a> to the current page. <b>Note:</b> Prior to release 1.9.11, this option was called <b>Like Pages</b> .	
Similar pages only listed in same language		
Rankings		
Structures		
Open page as structure		
Make structure from page		
Categorize structure pages together		
Create webhelp from structure		
A page can occur multiple times in a structure		



Setting	Description	Default
Structure navigation bar location:		
Import HTML		
Import pages		
Slideshows		
Redirect to similar wiki page		
User's page		
UserPage prefix:		
Users can lock pages		
Page creators are admin of their pages		
Print		
MultiPrint	If enabled a section is provided where a user can select several Wiki pages and then view them in a printer-friendly version. This can be used to print multiple pages.	
<b>Wiki Watch</b>		
Create watch for author on page creation		
Enable watch events when I am the editor		
Enable watches on comments		
Watch minor edits		
Keywords		

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Fieldset or section</b>		
Field name	Description	Value

Wiki

Wiki settings

CHANGE PREFERENCES

NO TAB

General PreferencesFeaturesStaging & ApprovalPage Listings

☐ Sandbox

☒ Comments

☐ Display by default.

Default number per page: 10

Default ordering: Points

☒ Attachments

☐ Display by default.

☐ Store in database.

☒ Store in directory.

Path:

MANAGE ATTACHMENTS

☒ Dumps

Tag for current wiki: CREATE

Restore wiki to tag: None RESTORE

Remove a tag: None REMOVE

GENERATE DUMP

DOWNLOAD LAST DUMP

☒ Pictures

☒ Use File Galleries to store pictures.

REMOVE UNUSED PICTURES

☒ Export

EXPORT WIKI PAGES

☒ WikiWords

☒ Accept dashes and underscores in WikiWords.

☒ Link plural WikiWords to their singular forms.

☒ History

Maximum number of versions: 0

Use 0 for unlimited versions.

Never delete versions younger than: 1 days.

☐ Display IP address.

Default diff style: Side-by-side diff

☐ History includes only page data, description, and change comment.

☒ Discuss pages on forums.

Forum for discussion: None

CREATE A FORUM

☒ View source

☐ Rating

☐ Backlinks

☐ Similar (like pages)

☐ Rankings

☒ Structures

☐ Open page as structure.

☐ Make structure from page.

☐ Categorize structure pages together.

Features tab of the Wiki Configuration page.

Setting	Description	Default
---------	-------------	---------

Fieldset or section

Field name	Description	Value
------------	-------------	-------

Wiki Features	
Sandbox:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Anonymous editors must input anti-bot code:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Last changes:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Dump:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Export:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Rating:	<input type="checkbox"/>
History:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
View source:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
List pages:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Backlinks:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Similar:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Rankings:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Undo:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Save Draft: (Requires AJAX) (Experimental)	<input type="checkbox"/>
MultiPrint:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Comments:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Spellchecking:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use templates:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Warn on edit conflict:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Edit idle timeout:	2 mins
Pictures:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use page description:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Show page title:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Show page ID:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cache wiki pages (global): <a href="#">(bug)</a>	0 (no cache)
Individual cache:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Footnotes:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Users can lock pages (if perm):	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use WikiWords:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Accept dashes and underscores in WikiWords:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Link plural WikiWords to their singular forms:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Use Wiki paragraph formatting:	<input type="checkbox"/>
But still create line breaks within paragraphs:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Automonospaced text:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Tables syntax:	\n for rows
Uses Slideshow:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Open page as structure:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Make structure from page:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Categorize structure pages together:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Create webhelp from structure:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use external link icons:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
User's Page:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
UserPage prefix:	UserPage
Page creators are admin of their pages:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Import HTML:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Import Page:	<input type="checkbox"/>
List authors:	as Creator & Last Editor
Wiki authors style by page settings:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Protect email against spam:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
When viewing a page, if it doesn't exist and has one like page, automatic redirection to this like page:	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Show/hide heading icon displayed before the heading:	<input type="checkbox"/>
Force and limit categorization to within subtree of:	None

Wiki Features area of the Wiki Configuration page.

Setting	Description	Default
---------	-------------	---------

#### Fieldset or section

Field name	Description	Value
------------	-------------	-------

/



## Wiki Staging & Approval tab

### Overview

Use this tab to allow wiki pages to be "staged (drafted)" before they are "approved" (published)

### Related Topics

- [Wiki](#)
- [Staging and Approval profile](#)

### To Access

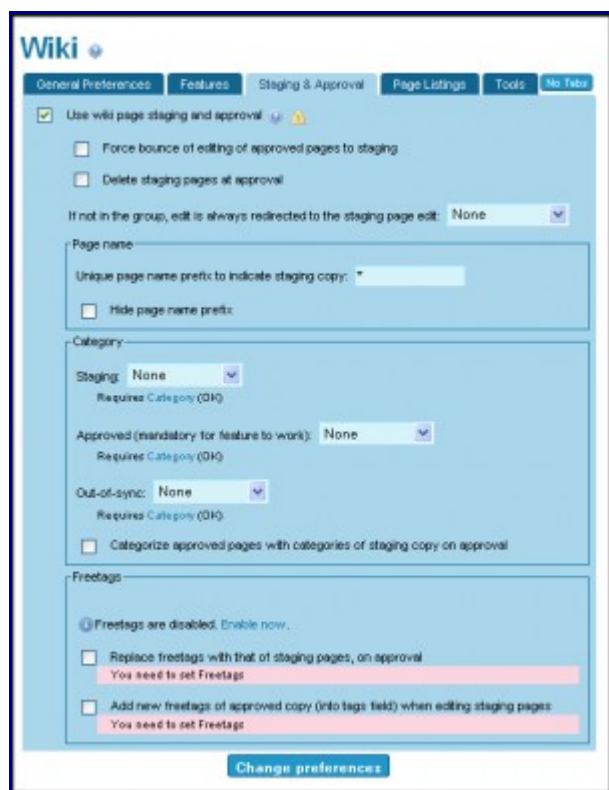
From the [Administer Wiki](#) page, click the **Staging and Approval** tab.

### Note

You must enable and configure the necessary [categories](#) before enabling this feature.

### [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x2.x](#)



## Staging and Approval tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Use wiki page staging and approval</b>		
Force bounce of editing of approved pages to staging		
Delete staging pages at approval	As soon as a page is approved the staging page is deleted	
If not in the group, edit is always redirected to the staging page edit:	This allow you to create new pages in a staging status.	
<b>Page name</b>		
Unique page name prefix to indicate staging copy:	A prefix is used to indicate staging copy: <b>This is required.</b> Basically staging copies of (approved) wiki pages are marked and recognized by having a prefix in front of their name. For example, if the prefix is set to "*", which is the default, the page "*Using Tiki" will be the staging copy of the page "Using Tiki". If you like, you can replace the prefix with something more meaningful, e.g. "On staging - ". Note, however, that if you change the prefix after initial configuration, you will need to rename the old staging copy pages in order to preserve the link between staging and approved	*

Setting	Description	Default
	versions. Otherwise, new staging copies based on the new prefix will begin to be used.	
Hide page name prefix	If selected, the prefix will be hidden in the page name that is shown on top of pages as they are viewed and edited (there is already will be a separate message on these pages to indicate to a user that he is viewing a page which is staging copy). The prefix is still shown on other pages, e.g. lists of pages, etc... as they will be relevant in those cases.	
<b>Category</b>		
Staging:	It is highly recommended to select a category to put staging pages in. You can then set permissions for this category, for example, edit perms and view perms both for registered users only. When staging pages are edited, they are automatically placed in this category when a user saves the page. This happens regardless of what other/no categories are selected by the user.	None
Approved (mandatory for feature to work):		None
Out-of-sync:	If "Delete staging pages at approval" is not activated, it is highly recommended to select a category to identify pages that are out of sync. When a user saves edits to staging pages, they are automatically placed in this category regardless of what other/no categories are selected by the user. At the same time, when these staging pages are approved, they are taken out of that category. If this setting is off, staging pages are always considered "out of sync" and there will be no indication, so setting this is really useful. Moreover, you can review pages that are out of sync through browsing the category.	None
Categorize approved pages with categories of staging copy on approval	If selected, the categorization of the approved page is set to that of the staging page upon approval, with the exception that auto-categorization of the special categories configured in this system are not affected (on approval, the approved copy will not have the category for staging pages set, and will continue to have the category for approved pages set).	
<b>Freetags</b>		
Replace freetags with that of staging pages, on approval	If selected, this replaces the freetags set on the approved page to those in the staging page upon approval.	
Add new freetags of approved copy (into tags field) when editing staging pages	If selected, when a user edits a staging page, freetags that are in the approved copy but not in the staging page will automatically be inserted into the freetags field. An editor/document reviewer will have a chance to change these tags before his final edit before approving.	

## Admin preferences and setup

The preferences under [Wiki Config](#) are explained here:

- **Use wiki page staging and approval:** If this is unchecked, the feature is completely off.
- **Unique [Naming convention](#):** a prefix is used to indicate staging copy: **This is compulsory for the feature to work.** Basically staging copies of (approved) wiki pages are marked and recognized by having a prefix in front of their name. For example, if the prefix is set to "\*",

which is the default, the page "**\*Using Tiki**" will be the staging copy of the page "Using Tiki". If you like, you can replace the prefix with something more meaningful, e.g. "On staging - ". Note, however, that if you change the prefix after initial configuration, you will need to rename the old staging copy pages in order to preserve the link between staging and approved versions. Otherwise, new staging copies based on the new prefix will begin to be used.

- **Hide page name prefix:** If selected, the prefix will be hidden in the page name that is shown on top of pages as they are viewed and edited (there is already will be a separate message on these pages to indicate to a user that he is viewing a page which is staging copy). The prefix is still shown on other pages, e.g. lists of pages, etc... as they will be relevant in those cases.
- **Category for staging pages:** It is highly recommended to select a category to put staging pages in. You can then set permissions for this category, for example, edit perms and view perms both for registered users only. When staging pages are edited, they are automatically placed in this category when a user saves the page. This happens regardless of what other/no categories are selected by the user.
- **Category for approved pages: This is compulsory for the feature to work.** You have to select a category to put all approved pages in. You can then set permissions for this category, for example, edit perms for system admins only, and view perms for everyone. The edit button of pages that are in this category will be redirected to the staging page, providing convenient access to edit the staging instead of the approved page. This edit button will be shown based on the edit perms the user has for the staging page, not the approved page. If the staging page does not exist yet, it will be created transparently. In the above example, if you click on edit while viewing "Using Tiki", you will be sent to edit "**\*Using Tiki**". Note, though, that you can still edit the approved page manually by accessing `tiki-editpage.php` url directly, e.g. `tiki-editpage.php?page=Using Tiki`, unless you set the "Force bounce..." setting below. Approved pages will automatically be placed in this category when they are approved. This happens regardless of what other/no categories are selected by the user.
- **Category for pages out of sync:** If "Delete staging pages at approval" is not activated, it is highly recommended to select a category to identify pages that are out of sync. When a user saves edits to staging pages, they are automatically placed in this category regardless of what other/no categories are selected by the user. At the same time, when these staging pages are approved, they are taken out of that category. If this setting is off, staging pages are always considered "out of sync" and there will be no indication, so setting this is really useful. Moreover, you can review pages that are out of sync through browsing the category.
- **Force [Redirect](#) of editing of approved pages to staging:** As mentioned above, you can already limit edit permissions by user group under [Category Admin](#). However, if you really want to, you can force redirect all requests of `tiki-editpage.php` for pages in the approved pages category to go to the staging copy. This may be useful to totally prevent direct editing of the approved version through direct tiki-editpage URL. NOTE: Even WITHOUT this selected the edit icons will redirect the user to edit the staging copy - it just does not prevent direct URL access.
- **Categorize approved pages with categories of staging copy on approval:** If selected, the categorization of the approved page is set to that of the staging page upon approval, with the exception that auto-categorization of the special categories configured in this system are not affected (on approval, the approved copy will not have the category for staging pages set, and



will continue to have the category for approved pages set).

- **Replace [freetags](#) with those from staging pages on approval:** If selected, this replaces the freetags set on the approved page to those in the staging page upon approval.
- **Copy new freetags of approved copy (to tags field) when editing staging pages:** If selected, when a user edits a staging page, freetags that are in the approved copy but not in the staging page will automatically be inserted into the freetags field. An editor/document reviewer will have a chance to change these tags before his final edit before approving.
- **Delete staging pages at approval:** As soon as a page is approved the staging page is deleted
- **If not in the group, edit is always redirected to the staging page edit:** This allow you to create new pages in a staging status.

If configuration of staging and approval appears not to work, try clearing cache in [System Admin](#) between steps

---

## *Wiki Page Staging and Approval*

**Requirements:** This feature requires [categories](#) to be turned on and categories created before it will work (see below).

The information below may be a bit out of date now. For best results, see [http://profiles.tiki.org/Staging\\_and\\_Approval](http://profiles.tiki.org/Staging_and_Approval)

Introduced in [Tiki2](#).

This feature is similar but different than the [articles and submissions](#) feature. Articles are like newspaper articles, once approved and published, they normally don't change. Whilst wiki pages are, by nature, always in flux.

Screencast: [http://marclaporte.com/staging\\_approval/staging\\_launch.htm](http://marclaporte.com/staging_approval/staging_launch.htm)



This is a [feature](#) to allow wiki pages to be "staged" or drafted before they are approved (published). This is useful, for example, to have a staging area where open contributions are welcome, but at the same time to have an official published knowledge base that is extremely stable, hence needing some kind of approval before page changes are shown there. This feature works with the [groups](#) and [categories](#) features to have customizable access to pages with different status.

Example:

Documentation site has a policy that

- approved pages are visible to the public, but are updated (approved) only by senior editors.
- meanwhile any registered user can edit the draft version of the page, which is reviewed periodically and approved (or not) by senior editors.

## ***Sample use case***

This is not meant to be definitive, but has been tested to work.

2 groups: author / approver

2 categories: staged / approved

1. An author creates a page XXXX in the staged category.
2. If category notification set, approver receives a message.
3. Anyone can edit the page while it remains in the staged category.
4. An approver approves the page for the 1st time by categorizing it to approved category.
5. Tiki automatically creates a page \*XXXX with the staged category and without the approved category.
6. An author can see the page \*XXXX and edits it again. If he tries to edit XXXX, tw redirects

- him to edit \*XXXX. An approver is also redirected to edit \*XXXX if he tries to edit XXXX.
7. If category notification set, approver receives a message whoever edits \*XXXX. Alternatively, approvers can check the "Out of Sync" category for pages that have edits not yet approved.
  8. When ready, an approver approves the page, by clicking on "approve" that appear on top of \*XXXX. Moreover, if not ready, the authors/approvers/ etc.. can all conduct edit war on the \*XXXX until they are happy, before approving.

Because no one edits the approved page directly, there is no chance of conflict, at the cost of a small inconvenience to approvers.

### ***Features that will be apparent***

- A link to approve a page appears while viewing staging pages if they are out of sync.
- A link to show page history? since the last approval (a diff) appears while viewing staging pages if the pages are out of sync. The determination of the version is based on the last edit date/time of the approved page, so it will not be correct if the approved page has been edited directly without going through the staging copy, another reason to use the "Force bounce option" above, but it is foreseeable that admins may want to be able to directly edit the approved page and consider that an "approved" version, so it depends on your needs.
- A note appears on the edit page screen indicating to a user that he is editing a staging page and if the page is out of sync.

### ***Important notes about creating new pages***

- When creating new pages as someone with permission to the approved category, place the page in the category for approved pages if this is a page that needs to be staged.
- When creating new pages as someone without permission to the approved category, it really doesn't matter in which category the page is stored. However, this page cannot be "approved" the automated way until it is approving for the first time by someone with permission to include it in the category for approved pages. For convenient locating of new items created by these users, it is possible (using another feature), to set the default category to a category you can create such as "New Pages", for the different groups/levels of contributors as you need.

### ***Important admin notes***

- Changing the categories settings explained above after initial install will require moving of pages to new categories to make sure that those specific features still work for those pages.
- Renaming or changing parent of categories have no effect (the system refers to categories by their ID, not name).
- Change the prefix setting after initial install will require Renaming the old staging copy pages in order to preserve the "link" between staging and approved versions.

- Direct [Renaming](#) of staging pages have been blocked in tiki-rename.php for usability reasons, and Renaming of pages now checks and renames staging copies as well (based on prefix) if this feature feature\_wikiapproval is on. Admins that have custom code doing Renaming of pages should be careful.

See attached comment for an example of perms

### ***Limitations***

- Wiki page attachments are not handled
- Structures are not handled

### ***Profile***

[http://profiles.tiki.org/Staging\\_and\\_Approval](http://profiles.tiki.org/Staging_and_Approval)

alias

- [Staging](#)
- [Approval](#)
- [Flagged revision](#)
- [Flagged revisions](#)
- [Staging and Approval](#)
- [Wiki Staging and Approval](#)

---

## ***Wiki Page Listings tab***

### **Overview**

Use this tab to configure which page listings are available and which fields appear when listing wiki pages.

### **Related Topics**

- [Wiki](#)

### **To Access**

From the [Administer Wiki](#) page, click the **Page Listings** tab.

### **Note**

After enabling specific page listing types, be sure to adjust the group [permissions](#), as necessary

## [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x2.x](#)

Wiki

General Preferences Features Staging & Approval Page Listings Tools **No Tabs**

☒ List pages  
tiki-listpages.php

☒ Last changes  
tiki-lastchanges.php

☐ Orphan pages  
tiki-orphan\_pages.php

☐ Pages not in structure

☐ Show map mode buttons in page list  
You need to set Google Maps

Configuration

Select which items to display when listing pages:

Default sort order: Name

Sort Direction:  
☐ Descending  
☒ Ascending

☐ Page ID

☒ Name  
Name length: 40

☒ Hits

☒ Last modification date

☐ Creator

☒ Last modified by

☐ Version

☒ Edit comments  
Edit Comment length: 200

☒ Description  
Description length: 200

☐ Status

☒ Versions

☐ Links

☐ Backlinks

☐ Size

☐ Language  
Requires Multilingual (OK)

☐ Categories  
Requires Category (OK)

☐ Categories path  
Requires Category (OK)

Change preferences

Page Listings tab

Setting	Description	Default
List pages	If enabled users (with permission) can see the sortable, searchable list of Wiki pages (tiki-listpages.php). Use the <b>Configuration</b> area to specify which items to display.	Enabled
Last changes	If enabled users (with permission) can see the sortable, searchable list of Wiki pages (tiki-lastchanges.php) organized by last updated date. Use the <b>Configuration</b> area to specify which items to display.	
Orphan pages	If enabled users (with permission) can see the sortable, searchable list of Wiki pages (tiki-orphan_pages.php) with no <a href="#">backlinks</a> . Use the <b>Configuration</b> area to specify which items to display.	
Pages not in structure		
Show map mode buttons in page list		
<b>Configuration</b>	Select which items to display when listing pages:	
Default sort order:		Name
Sort Direction:		Ascending
Page ID		
Name		Enabled
Name length:		40
Hits		Enabled
Last modification date		Enabled
Creator		
Last modified by		Enabled
Version		
Edit comments		Enabled
Edit Comment length:		200
Description		Enabled
Description length:		200
Status		
Versions		Enabled
Links		
Backlinks		
Size		
Language		
Categories		
Categories path		

---

Table of contents:

---

# File Galleries

The file galleries feature can be a site repository or download manager for all types of files: images, video, audio, podcasts, text, software (releases, patches, docs), etc., etc. Files uploaded into file galleries can easily be displayed or linked from Wiki pages, articles, or blog posts.

File galleries are created and configured through the Tiki interface. Use the Tiki permissions system to specify who can create galleries, upload, download and delete files, etc. Statistics are kept of each download. You can produce stats for the most downloaded files, most visited file galleries and last uploaded files.

## *Table of contents*

- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- [General Administration](#)
- [General Preferences tab](#)
- [General Settings tab](#)
- [Navigation tab](#)
- [Date and Time tab](#)
  - [Date and Time Formats](#)
- [Change Admin Password tab](#)
- [Features Admin](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.10\)](#)
    - [Major features](#)
    - [Minor features](#)
    - [Site-wide features](#)
    - [Technical Features](#)
    - [User interface enhancement features](#)
    - [Experimental Features](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
    - [User Features](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.9.x\)](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
      - [User Features](#)
- [General Layout options](#)
  - [Layout-per-section Options](#)



- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Login Administration page](#)
- [General Preferences](#)
  - [Case Sensitivity](#)
  - [Remember Me](#)
  - [Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity](#)
  - [CustomFields](#)
- [LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4](#)
  - [Changes](#)
  - [Settings](#)
- [LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X](#)
  - [LDAP §fe70dcc7b334983be9d46331092db03d§ General Settings Overview](#)
- [LDAP Authentication tab](#)
  - [How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use](#)
  - [How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Unix](#)
    - [Active Directory](#)
    - [Zimbra LDAP](#)
  - [Debugging](#)
  - [Common Problems and Workarounds](#)
    - [Certificate Problems](#)
  - [How it works](#)
    - [Group membership and permissions](#)
    - [How anonymous binding works](#)
  - [LDAP §b22ccde9d2a65de3a894a23f4dfd1551§ Troubleshooting](#)
- [Aliases](#)
- [PAM Authentication tab](#)
  - [AuthPAM](#)
    - [Admin Documentation](#)
    - [Requirements for AuthPAM](#)
    - [Permissions!](#)
    - [Security Issues](#)
  - [Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki](#)
  - [Shibboleth step 2:Update Shibboleth](#)

- [Intro](#)
  - [Mod phpcas](#)
- [Notes from successful install \(with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4\)](#)
  - [Install](#)
- [CAS Authentication tab](#)
  - [Requirements for phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [Enabling phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration](#)
    - [phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options](#)
- [Community Administration](#)
- [User Features tab](#)
- [Community General Settings Tab](#)
  - [General Description](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Typical Uses](#)
- [Friendship Network tab](#)
- [Admin Profiles Page](#)
  - [For more information](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
- [Apply Profiles tab](#)
- [Profiles Advanced tab](#)
- [Look & Feel](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
      - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [Theme tab](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
      - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [General Layout Options tab](#)

- [Shadow Layer tab](#)
- [Pagination Links tab](#)
- [UI Effects tab](#)
- [Custom CSS tab](#)
- [Miscellaneous tab](#)
- [Internationalization \(i18n\)](#)
  - [Overview](#)
- [Babelfish Links](#)
- [Customized String Translation tab](#)
  - [Feature Modules](#)
  - [User's Configuration Modules](#)
  - [Navigation Modules](#)
  - [Recent Changes Modules](#)
  - ["Best of" Modules](#)
  - [Help and Support Modules](#)
  - [Search Modules](#)
  - [MyTiki Modules](#)
  - [Miscellaneous Modules](#)
- [Modules](#)
  - [Modules vs. Plugins](#)
  - [Related pages](#)
- [Tiki Modules](#)
  - [More information.](#)
- [Meta Tags Config](#)
- [Meta Tags Configuration page](#)
- [Performance Admin page](#)
- [Performance Tab](#)
- [Bytecode Cache Tab](#)
- [Wiki tab](#)
- [Database tab](#)
- [Memcache tab](#)
- [Plugins tab](#)
- [Major Slowdown tab](#)
- [Sessions tab](#)
  - [General Security](#)
  - [Spam Protection](#)
  - [Search Results](#)
  - [Site Access](#)
  - [Tokens](#)
  - [Clipperz Online Password Management](#)

- [Security Administration](#)
  - [Prevent automatic/robot registration](#)
- [Spam Protection tab](#)
- [Clipperz online password manager](#)
- [Comments Admin page](#)
- [Comments](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Feeds Admin page](#)
- [Feeds](#)
  - [Overview](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Setting up feeds](#)
  - [More information](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Feeds General Preferences tab](#)
- [Feeds](#)
- [Connect page](#)
  - [Calculation configuration](#)
- [Advanced Ratings page](#)
- [Advanced Rating](#)
  - [Sorting items according to advanced rating](#)
  - [Set-up](#)
  - [Reference](#)
    - [mul \(Multiply\)](#)
    - [add \(Sum\)](#)
    - [rating-average and rating-sum](#)
    - [str](#)
    - [article-info](#)
    - [attribute](#)
  - [Appendix](#)
- [Related](#)
- [Wiki Admin page](#)
  - [Dumps](#)
- [Wiki General Preferences tab](#)
- [Wiki Features tab](#)
  - [Admin preferences and setup](#)
- [Wiki Staging & Approval tab](#)
- [Wiki Page Staging and Approval](#)
  - [Sample use case](#)
    - [Features that will be apparent](#)

- [Important notes about creating new pages](#)
- [Important admin notes](#)
- [Limitations](#)
- [Profile](#)
- [Wiki Page Listings tab](#)
- [File Galleries](#)
  - [Key features](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki6](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki5](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki3](#)
  - [From Here](#)
  - [Alias](#)
  - [See Also](#)

## ***Key features***

- Folders and Sub-folders with permissions
- Keeps archives (so you can still access previous versions of a file)
- Check-in / check-out / lock
- [WebDAV](#) access
- Drafts

## ***File Gallery improvements in Tiki6***

Starting in [Tiki6](#), file in file galleries can have drafts, like Wiki pages.

## ***File Gallery improvements in Tiki5***

Starting in [Tiki5](#), file galleries can be accessed via [WebDAV](#).

## ***File Gallery improvements in Tiki3***

Starting in [Tiki3](#), file galleries can also support image galleries, with image browsing, and dynamic insertion of wiki syntax to add an image to a wiki page.

### **File Gallery to produce image galleries**

File galleries have been improved in a way that they can handle images also, and act *de facto* as image galleries, or podcast galleries, etc., with added features on them. This is to end up in newer tiki releases

reducing code duplication between file galleries and image galleries, and users confusion on where to save and find files (whatever type they are). In the same way, in later Tiki releases, file galleries might also handle file attachments to wiki pages, ...



## File Gallery diaporama

Improved file gallery diaporama.

Moreover, File galleries are closer to replace image galleries, since they include most (if not all) the previous functionality from image galleries, and benefit from the improvements in the file galleries.

Examples:



## New file types recognized by tiki

New file type icons have been added to file galleries in order to recognize and visualize them accordingly. They include: .7z, .flv, .mp4, .odg, odp, .ods, .odt, .ogm, .ogv, .svg.



## *From Here*

- [File Gallery General Settings](#)
- [Gallery Listings](#)
- [Admin Gallery Listings](#)
- [Gallery Search Indexing](#)

## *Alias*

- [File Galleries](#)
- [Virtual disk](#)
- [DMS](#)
- [Document Management System](#)

## *See Also*

- [multimedia file types](#)

---

Table of contents:

---

Table of contents:

---

Table of contents:

---

Table of contents:

---

# Blogs

An abbreviation for [Weblog](#), the term "blog" refers to a collection of related posts, which are sorted (by default) in reverse chronological order (the most recent posts are shown first).

Some blogs have a single author, who uses the blog to keep what amounts to an online diary: a day-to-day record of the individual's varied thoughts, reflections, and pertinent Web links. Other blogs contain posts from two or more authors; typically, these blogs focus on a more or less well-defined topic, such as sci-fi movie reviews. In schools and colleges, blogs are increasingly used to facilitate student journals.

TikiWiki's Blogs feature enables users to enjoy all the best features of weblogs (including RSS output, trackback pings, and remote posting via Blogger-compatible programs, such as w.Bloggar), but without the hassle (and, often, the expense) of using commercial blogging services.

A TikiWiki site can be set up to display a blog as its home page (see [General Admin](#) ). This means you can use TikiWiki as an alternative to less-feature-rich alternatives, such as Moveable Type.

## *Feature Overview*


TikiWiki's Blogs feature enables administrators to set up as many blogs as they like, or administrators can give users permission to create their own blogs. Blogs can be accessed by listing them (Menu/Blogs/List Blogs) or by creating a link to one or more blogs in a custom menu.

Blog configuration options include the number of posts to display, whether other users are allowed to post in the blog, and whether searches and comments are allowed. In addition, the blog heading can be edited; by default, it displays the date of creation and last modification, the total number of posts and visits, and a figure that sums up the blog's activity level.

When posting to a blog, users can choose between the textarea or WYSIWYG editors; posting options include title and one or more *trackback* URLs. (See "About Trackback," below.) Users can also take advantage of TikiWiki's implementation of Blogger's XMLRPC protocol, which enables users to use a Blogger-compatible program (such as [wBloggar](#) ) to post to their TikiWiki blogs (see "About XMLRPC," below).

## *About Trackback*

The Trackback protocol, developed by Moveable Type, provides a blog author with a very convenient, low-bandwidth way to tell other blog authors that their posts have been referenced and discussed. For

example, suppose you've just read a post on blog A. You post to your blog (Blog  and



discuss the Blog A post. When you save your post, you include the trackback URL. TikiWiki then sends a *trackback ping* (actually, it's not a ping, but a short message conforming to the Trackback protocol) to Blog A; Blog A's author can then see that you've posted something that's related. Now suppose the Blog A author posts something about YOUR post. When you look at your post, you'll see a list of trackback pings (including the page title, URL, and blog name). For more information on using trackback, see [Blog User](#).

## About XMLRPC

TikiWiki implements the XMLRPC standard developed by Blogger, a popular commercial blogging site. This standard is an [wp:application programming interface \(API\)](#), which means that any application conforming to the standard can upload content to Blogger — or any service that conforms to the same API on the receiving end. For this reason, any application that correctly implements the Blogger XMLRPC API can be used to post and edit content in Tiki blogs. To use Blogger XMLRPC API with a Tiki, enable it in the Features panel. You can then use Tiki blogs using dekstop applications like [wBlogger](#).

## Blog Revamp

In [Tiki6](#) the Blog has been revamped. See [Blog Revamp](#)



(The image shows a blog layout that can be achieved using Look and Feel configuration settings; an ["Easy Blog" Profile](#) is being made to simplify the configuring process. The "Even Monkeys" theme files will be available at [themes.tikiwiki.org](http://themes.tikiwiki.org).)

More documentation

- [Blog Listings](#)
- [Blogs TikiMovie](#)  
*View in action click after click how to use Blogs in a Flash movie.*
- [ArticleVsBlog](#) comparison

Related Information

- To enable blogs for your site, see [General Admin](#).
- To enable the XMLRPC API, see [Features Admin](#).
- To choose configuration options for all blogs on your site, see [Blog Config](#).
- To specify permissions for blog users, see [Permissions](#) for the general procedure.
- To create and use a blog, see [Blog User](#).

- To configure the popular wBlogger blog-posting tool for use with TikiWiki, see [wBlogger](#).

#### Useful Links

- Moveable Type  
<http://www.moveabletype.org>
- Blogger  
<http://new.blogger.com>
- wBlogger  
<http://wblogger.com/>
- Other blog software options (tikiwiki directory)  
[http://tikiwiki.org/tiki-directory\\_browse.php?parent=26](http://tikiwiki.org/tiki-directory_browse.php?parent=26)
- Weblog on wikipedia  
<http://en2.wikipedia.org/wiki/Weblog>
- Beginner's Guide to Trackback (Moveable Type)  
<http://www.moveabletype.org/trackback/beginners/>
- The ultimate Weblogging system, outlined  
<http://mpt.phrasewise.com/2003/05/02#a507>

#### alias

- [Blogs](#)
- [Weblog](#)
- [Weblogs](#)
- [Blogging](#)
- [Blogosphere](#)

---

#### Table of contents:

---

# Image Galleries

See FILE GALLERIES instead from Tiki 3 onwards

In [Tikiwiki 3.0](#) Image galleries are being phased out in favor of a combined/improved [File Galleries](#) section which handles all file types. For new tiki installation, See [File gallery](#) instead.

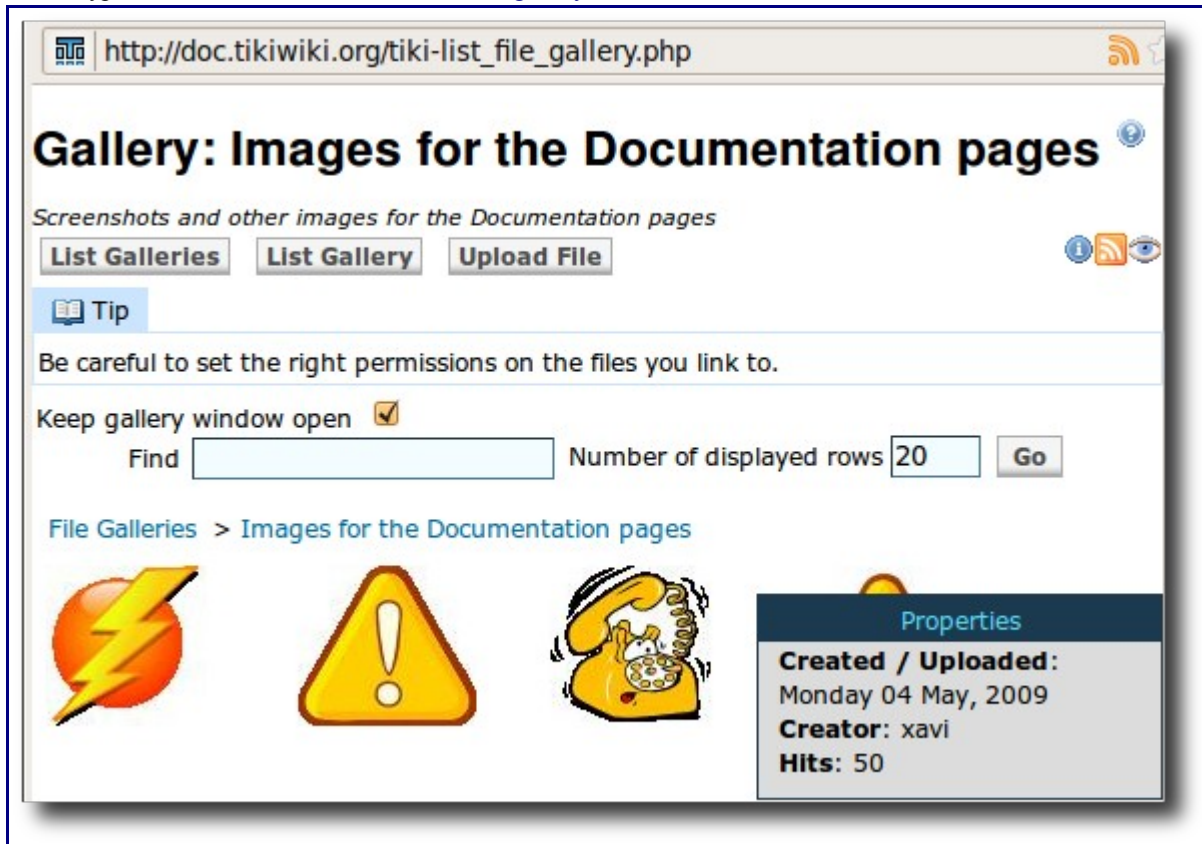


Image galleries are collections of images. If the Image Gallery feature is enabled in your Tiki installation, you can create public or private galleries and upload images to them from your local hard drive or another Internet URL. Tiki automatically creates thumbnail versions of your uploaded images; you don't have to do so yourself. Galleries can be used for photo albums of course, but also creatively for other applications such as product "showrooms".

## Feature Overview

The following is a short list of Image Gallery features:

- Enable or disable the Image Gallery feature.

- Set display of listing fields, such as description or created date.
- Make a gallery public or private, and control its permissions.
- Create, modify and delete galleries.
- Adjust auto-thumbnailing settings.
- Set the number of thumbnail rows and columns.
- Categorize your galleries.
- Upload images from URL or disk. (NOTE: To upload a lot of pictures at once, upload a .zip file containing all of your image files and tikiwiki will automatically unzip the image files and enter them into the gallery for you).
- Override auto-thumbnailing by uploading your own thumbnails.
- Enter a name for your uploaded image, or, let Image Gallery use the filename.
- Put coordinates on images and display them using the [maps](#) feature.
- Directory Batch Loading to upload your images by scp, ftp, etc
- Batch upload (upload .zip which is decompressed on the server)

#### From Here

- To enable Image Galleries for your Tiki site, see [General Admin](#).
- To read the user manual for Image Galleries, see [Image Gallery User](#).
- To learn about administering Image Galleries, see [Image Gallery Config](#).

#### Useful Links

##### alias

- [Image Galleries](#)
-

# Articles

## *Table of contents*

- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- [General Administration](#)
- [General Preferences tab](#)
- [General Settings tab](#)
- [Navigation tab](#)
- [Date and Time tab](#)
  - [Date and Time Formats](#)
- [Change Admin Password tab](#)
- [Features Admin](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.10\)](#)
    - [Major features](#)
    - [Minor features](#)
    - [Site-wide features](#)
    - [Technical Features](#)
    - [User interface enhancement features](#)
    - [Experimental Features](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
    - [User Features](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.9.x\)](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
      - [User Features](#)
- [General Layout options](#)
  - [Layout-per-section Options](#)
- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Login Administration page](#)
- [General Preferences](#)

- [Case Sensitivity](#)
  - [Remember Me](#)
- [Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity](#)
- [CustomFields](#)
- [LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4](#)
  - [Changes](#)
  - [Settings](#)
- [LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X](#)
  - [LDAP §fe70dcc7b334983be9d46331092db03d§ General Settings Overview](#)
- [LDAP Authentication tab](#)
  - [How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use](#)
  - [How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki](#)
- [Examples](#)
  - [Unix](#)
  - [Active Directory](#)
  - [Zimbra LDAP](#)
- [Debugging](#)
- [Common Problems and Workarounds](#)
  - [Certificate Problems](#)
- [How it works](#)
  - [Group membership and permissions](#)
  - [How anonymous binding works](#)
- [LDAP §b22ccde9d2a65de3a894a23f4dfd1551§ Troubleshooting](#)
- [Aliases](#)
- [PAM Authentication tab](#)
  - [AuthPAM](#)
    - [Admin Documentation](#)
    - [Requirements for AuthPAM](#)
    - [Permissions!](#)
    - [Security Issues](#)
  - [Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki](#)
  - [Shibboleth step 2:Update Shibboleth](#)
- [Intro](#)
  - [Mod phpcas](#)
- [Notes from successful install \(with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4\)](#)
  - [Install](#)
- [CAS Authentication tab](#)
  - [Requirements for phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [Enabling phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication](#)

- [phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration](#)
  - [phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options](#)
- [Community Administration](#)
- [User Features tab](#)
- [Community General Settings Tab](#)
  - [General Description](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Typical Uses](#)
- [Friendship Network tab](#)
- [Admin Profiles Page](#)
  - [For more information](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
- [Apply Profiles tab](#)
- [Profiles Advanced tab](#)
- [Look & Feel](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
      - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [Theme tab](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
      - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [General Layout Options tab](#)
- [Shadow Layer tab](#)
- [Pagination Links tab](#)
- [UI Effects tab](#)
- [Custom CSS tab](#)
- [Miscellaneous tab](#)
- [Internationalization \(i18n\)](#)
  - [Overview](#)
- [Babelfish Links](#)

- [Customized String Translation tab](#)
  - [Feature Modules](#)
  - [User's Configuration Modules](#)
  - [Navigation Modules](#)
  - [Recent Changes Modules](#)
  - ["Best of" Modules](#)
  - [Help and Support Modules](#)
  - [Search Modules](#)
  - [MyTiki Modules](#)
  - [Miscellaneous Modules](#)
- [Modules](#)
  - [Modules vs. Plugins](#)
  - [Related pages](#)
- [Tiki Modules](#)
  - [More information.](#)
- [Meta Tags Config](#)
- [Meta Tags Configuration page](#)
- [Performance Admin page](#)
- [Performance Tab](#)
- [Bytecode Cache Tab](#)
- [Wiki tab](#)
- [Database tab](#)
- [Memcache tab](#)
- [Plugins tab](#)
- [Major Slowdown tab](#)
- [Sessions tab](#)
  - [General Security](#)
  - [Spam Protection](#)
  - [Search Results](#)
  - [Site Access](#)
  - [Tokens](#)
  - [Clipperz Online Password Management](#)
- [Security Administration](#)
  - [Prevent automatic/robot registration](#)
- [Spam Protection tab](#)
- [Clipperz online password manager](#)
- [Comments Admin page](#)
- [Comments](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Feeds Admin page](#)



- [Feeds](#)
  - [Overview](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Setting up feeds](#)
  - [More information](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Feeds General Preferences tab](#)
- [Feeds](#)
- [Connect page](#)
  - [Calculation configuration](#)
- [Advanced Ratings page](#)
- [Advanced Rating](#)
  - [Sorting items according to advanced rating](#)
  - [Set-up](#)
  - [Reference](#)
    - [mul \(Multiply\)](#)
    - [add \(Sum\)](#)
    - [rating-average and rating-sum](#)
    - [str](#)
    - [article-info](#)
    - [attribute](#)
  - [Appendix](#)
- [Related](#)
- [Wiki Admin page](#)
  - [Dumps](#)
- [Wiki General Preferences tab](#)
- [Wiki Features tab](#)
  - [Admin preferences and setup](#)
- [Wiki Staging & Approval tab](#)
- [Wiki Page Staging and Approval](#)
  - [Sample use case](#)
    - [Features that will be apparent](#)
    - [Important notes about creating new pages](#)
    - [Important admin notes](#)
  - [Limitations](#)
  - [Profile](#)
- [Wiki Page Listings tab](#)
- [File Galleries](#)
  - [Key features](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki6](#)

- [File Gallery improvements in Tiki5](#)
- [File Gallery improvements in Tiki3](#)
- [From Here](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [See Also](#)
- [Blogs](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
  - [About Trackback](#)
  - [About XMLRPC](#)
  - [Blog Revamp](#)
- [Image Galleries](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
- [Articles](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
    - [Topics](#)
    - [Article Types](#)
  - [Alias](#)

Articles and submissions are one of the central features of the TikiWiki Content Management System (CMS). With articles you can build the foundation for a site like those constructed using CMS systems like PHPNuke or Postnuke with the added advantages of Tiki. Articles are always displayed in the articles section, but can also be included in wiki pages via the [pluginArticles](#) and in the side columns using [Module Last\\_Articles](#)

Unlike [Wiki](#) pages, articles are typically not modified after having been published. They have several attributes, including a "publish date".

See also [Multilingual Article](#).

There are three structural components for the Articles sub-system: Topics, Articles and Submissions.

- Topics - Each item belongs to one, and only one, topic. You can also assign multiple categories to each item.
- Article - The actual content item that gets displayed, commented on, etc.
- Submission - This is an article that hasn't been approved yet by an authorized admin.

## ***Feature Overview***

## Topics

Articles and submissions are classified in topics. You can edit topics from the admin topics screen.

**Note:** You must create a topic before anyone can submit an article!

In this screen you can add and remove topics or you can activate/deactivate topics without removing them. You can also click the perms link to assign permissions to the topic.

The permissions for topic works as follows:

- If no permission is assigned to the topic then everybody can read articles or reviews in this topic.
- If the tiki\_p\_read\_topic permission is assigned for the topic only the groups with the permission can view the topic and other users won't see content in the topic (Articles, reviews,etc). This can be used to manage private topics that only users in some groups can read.

NB: Topics are not [categories](#). Topic is only for articles, category is for a lot of Tikiwiki objects

In the menu, click on Admin Topics:



The admin topic panel allows you to set the config:



## Article Types

The article "type" defines the overall settings for a specific article; things like:

- Can visitors post comments to articles?
- Does the article "expire" after a specific date.
- And more.

There are currently 4 different article types:

- Article - Normal type, only displays in "Article Home" after the publication date.
- Review - Articles with reader-added ratings. Only displays in "Article Home" after the publication date.
- Event - Used for showing upcoming events or to automatically remove content from your site. Events display until the "Publication/Event Date". Switching the type between article and event should cause it to appear and disappear from the Article Home page. (**Note:** Events are a v1.8 feature)
- Classifieds

You can change or delete these article types to match your need and you can create as many articles types you want

In the menu, click on Admin Types.



The admin type panel allows you to set the config



From Here

- To enable articles for your site, see [General Admin](#).
- [ArticleVsBlog](#) comparison
- [Articles General Settings](#)
- [Articles Listing](#)

## Alias

- [Article](#)
- [Submission](#)
- [Submissions](#)
- [Topic](#)
- [Topics](#)
- [News](#)
- [Announcement](#)
- [Announcements](#)

---

Table of contents:

---

Table of contents:

---

# Forums

Forums are one of the more frequently used [features](#) in tikiwiki.

## *Feature Overview*

Welcome to one of the most interesting features in Tiki: the forums system, the concepts are very simple:

- A forum is a collection of topics (also called **threads**) about a subject. You can have a forum to discuss a product, movies, sports, the weather; anything you think of.
- A topic/thread is a collection of messages (also called **posts**) in a particular forum.
- A post/message is a message a user has submitted about a particular topic.



From Here

[Forum User](#)

[Forum Admin](#)

Useful Links

Also see: [Forum and Mailing List Synchronization](#), which can be used to to archive messages from a mailing list into a Tiki forum and back.

---

Table of contents:

---

Table of contents:

---

# Trackers (Overview)

## *What are Trackers?*

Using Trackers, you can create forms for collecting data and make reports from that data. Trackers can combine structured information collected from users; the feature is a powerful, flexible tool. Originally, trackers were used to collect and manage bugs. They evolved into an open-ended system where you can track any kind of user input in a customizable form. Each tracker has its own mini database. Trackers operate as a standalone feature, and can be fully integrated within wiki pages. Users with the appropriate permissions can devise trackers to collect any kind of information they want. Combining trackers and the wiki makes Tiki a [Structured Wiki](#).

## *Related Pages*

---



### **Trackers**

This demo shows how to create a tracker and tracker fields. It then demonstrates two methods to populate the tracker and display the tracker information. Thanks to [Tiki for Smarties](#)

### **Trackers can:**

- be used to collect additional data from users upon [registration](#).
- be used like a customizable [articles](#) feature with admin definable forms
- assist workflows by tracking tasks.
- act as expanded [polls](#), [surveys](#) or [quizzes](#)
- import and export their settings and data.
- Have customized templates to submit and display your information with a [Pretty Tracker](#)

### **Trackers can't yet:** (but it improves with each version)

- do extensive calculations - the calculations are limited.

## *Four Steps to make a Tracker*

---

Step	Details	Help Page
1. <b>Create</b> the Tracker	Admin names the tracker and assigns overall parameters and permissions	<a href="#">Creating a Tracker</a>
2. <b>Add Fields</b> to the Tracker	Admin defines the columns and type of information collected	<a href="#">Adding fields to a tracker</a>
3. <b>Submit Items</b> to the tracker	Users fill out the forms to create <i>items</i> in the tracker	<a href="#">Adding items to a tracker</a>
4. <b>View or List</b> the results	Use tracker plugins to view a customized tracker output in a page	<a href="#">Viewing Tracker Results</a>
5. <b>Assign Trackers to Groups</b>	optional - trackers can also be used upon registration.	<a href="#">Assigning Trackers to groups</a>

## *What can Trackers be used for?*

---

Trackers can recreate online any kind of table or spreadsheet, not including the fancy formatting or calculations.

- support tickets
- contact managers
- feature requests
- purchase orders
- bug reports
- feedback reports
- news submissions
- project management

### **Next Page . . .**

- [Creating a Tracker](#)
- [Adding Fields to a Tracker](#)
- [Adding Items to a Tracker](#)

### **Example: Department Staff**





## *Demos of Trackers used for production*

- Visit <http://tiki.org/Trackers> to see a list of some Tiki sites (as examples) using them at production level.
- You can import the [tracker definition used for dev.tiki.org](http://dev.tiki.org/tracker_definition)

## *Related links*

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Structured\\_wiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Structured_wiki)

Tracker Plugins:

1. [PluginTracker](#) : Create a form in a wiki page (to populate a tracker)
2. [PluginTrackerFilter](#) : Display a dynamic report in a wiki page (from the data in a tracker)
3. [PluginTrackerItemField](#) : This plugin allows you to display or to test the value of a field of a tracker item.
4. [PluginTrackerList](#) : Display a report in a wiki page (from the data in a tracker)
5. [PluginTrackerPrefill](#)
6. [PluginTrackerStat](#) : Display some statistics about a tracker.
7. [PluginTrackerTimeline](#)
8. [Plugin Tracker Advanced](#)

## *Profiles*

Profiles making use of trackers

[http://profiles.tiki.org/Bug\\_Tracker](http://profiles.tiki.org/Bug_Tracker)

## *Alias*

- [Tracker](#)
- [Form](#)
- [Forms](#)
- [Form Generator](#)
- [Questionnaire](#)
- [Questionnaires](#)

- [CRUD](#) Create, read, update and delete (CRUD) is done with Trackers.
-

# Polls

Polls are a commonly used in community and news oriented sites to help reveal popular opinion or for decision making. For example, the Tikiwiki Community has always used polls to decide the titles of each Tiki Release since 1.0. Polls are only one way to ask questions to users.

## Alternatives to Polls:

- [Surveys](#) - can include multiple questions (polls only ask one).
- [Quiz](#) - is a survey with a fixed amount of time to answer it - can be used for online tests.
- [Trackers](#) is a more robust way to collect input from users and display collected results.

## *Related Pages*

Pages about this feature: [Poll Admin](#)

## *Using Polls*

To begin using Polls, first activate the feature in the ADMIN-->General screen.

Note: for version 2.2 (and possibly others) a poll template selected in the Wiki edit screen will only be saved to the database if the Categories feature is also enabled.

Tiki you can create as many polls as you want. zero to n polls in the Tiki pages. You can also have a set of several active polls and display only one poll in a page. In that case, Tiki will rotate through the set of polls. Users with the right permission can see poll results, examine old polls and vote in any poll that is not closed.

## *Polls as a Plugin*

- [PluginPoll](#)

## *Polls as a Side Module*

Once you have activated the polls feature you can assign a poll to side module using **Create new user module** under Admin Modules, see [Modules](#).

(Copy this template into any feature page and use as a format guide.)

## ***Permissions***

### ***Polls and Anonymous***

It is possible to allow an anonymous to vote by activating the feature in admin->polls and assigning tiki\_p\_vote permission to Anonymous (admin->groups). In tikiwiki 1.9, Anonymous can vote as many times as they want. In version 2.0, Anonymous can vote only one time during their php session (check admin->phpinfo->session.gc\_maxlifetime to have an idea of the minimum time a session last - depending on your server setting and the activity of your site, it can be longer).

# Poll templates

A poll template is a poll used for [Rating](#), such as to ask "Was this page helpful?". The poll template can be added to a Wiki pages or a Tracker. The [Category](#) feature must be enabled.

The steps are:

- create a template poll
- create the poll option
- enable admin->wiki->rating
- when editing a page, give the poll to the field 'Use rating'

And it will look like this in a wiki page



alias

- [Poll](#)

# Calendar

## New in version 2 and version 3

[+]

Version 2.0 saw some major enhancements to the calendar

- New look of calendars in every views, especially in week view which is now displayed with hours details. Events on multiple days are also better displayed. In week view, when there is more than 3 events, a special zone will be displayed and the overbox will contain all details,
- New recurrence feature to have the same event each week/month/year between two dates or for X occurrences. An event from an occurrence can be modified later. When modifying an event from a recurrence, TikiWiki will ask the user if he wants to change only the current event, all the events of the recurrence, or events of the recurrence which were not already modified,
- New iCal export feature,
- New option to choose the calendars to display by default. Also keep in database the user last calendar choices in order to keep use the same filter when he comes back,
- New "standard colors" when creating a calendar to ease the choice of calendar colors

# General

There are several time/date & calendar-related features:

- The [Mini Calendar](#): MyTiki's personal calendar. A simple appointment list.
- The **Calendar**: Tiki's main calendar. This can display:
  - The [Tools Calendars](#) which report system-created lists of changes/additions, such as the creation or edit of a wiki page, upload of a file, including date and time, user, and description. This requires the permission `tiki_p_view_tiki_calendar`.
  - The **Event Calendars** which show user created information such as events or appointments, and requires the permission `tiki_p_view_calendar`. Different calendars can be created, with distinct permissions for each. It is also possible to setup a Personal calendar here. This duplicates the mini-calendar feature but with integration with the other calendars (so you can see in one view both your personal events and the other events).
- The feature [jscalendar](#) adds a nifty date picker to Event Calendars. (and trackers)
- The [modules](#) calendar and `calendar_new` add a small calendar to a lateral column with events in hover boxes

## Example

Example of usage in a wiki page through the plugin module and several modules inside.



## Key Function and Sub-features

- Calendar tab provides view of appointments for a time period set by administrator
- Event tab allows for event scheduling
- Events can be all day long.
- Several categories for simple selection.
- Import Events from a CSV - using `url/tiki-calendar_import.php`
- You can change your site's date and time preferences in `url/tiki-admin.php?page=general`

## Related Links

- [Calendar User](#)
- [Calendar Admin](#)
- [Js Calendar](#)



- [Module calendar\\_new](#)
- [Tiki event management system](#)

#### Alias

- [User Calendar](#)
  - [Calendars](#)
  - [mini-calendar](#)
  - [event](#)
  - [calendar of events](#)
  - [event calendar](#)
  - [Scheduling](#)
-

# Categories

---

## General Description

Categories are a way to classify Tiki objects, including blogs, image galleries, articles, polls, forums, wiki pages, file galleries. It is similar to, but different from [tags](#) and [structures](#). Any Tiki [object](#) including wiki pages, [blog](#) posts, [forum](#) topics, [calendars](#), [trackers](#) . . . can be added to one or many categories.

Categories are often used to control access to different sets of content. Setting [permissions](#) for a category will **override** [global permissions](#) for objects in that category.

Example: A "public" category for anonymous users.

If the global permissions in tikiwiki are set such that anonymous? users cannot see wiki pages, then you can define a category called *public*, which does allow the [group](#) anonymous users to view the content. Then by adding a wiki page to category *public* - this page will now be visible without logging in.

Categories can also be used to aid navigation or create a [taxonomy](#) of objects. Categories are a tool that persists for all features, not just for wiki or articles or trackers. Depending on the settings, category listings can be displayed in a side module, above or below the content. [Menus](#), [modules](#) and [structures](#) are also used for navigation, and categories for access control. Articles also use [topics](#) for classification.

---

## Key Functioning and sub-features

- Organize categories in a tree hierarchy with unlimited subcategories.
- Assign objects to one or many categories
- Administrators can apply different permissions to different categories.
- Administrators can apply different themes to different categories.
- Deep search into subcategories from the [category browser](#)
- On wiki pages, you can show the category path and/or show objects in the same category(ies)
- Manage [Category Transitions](#) (Tiki4)

## Category Permissions

The way that category permissions work has changed substantially over time.

Up to version 1.9.11, a user with edit permission for a type of object is allowed to edit any object which they can view. In version 2.0 the [tiki\\_p\\_edit\\_categorized](#) permission allows editing of objects with the user's categories. See also [Categories Details](#).

Starting in [Tiki4](#), all permissions can be added to categories, and [Category Transitions](#) are introduced.

By changing the theme from one category to the next it is possible to create visually distinct "zones" in a tikiwiki site.

#### Related Plugins

- [PluginCategory](#) - creates a table of contents using categories.
- [PluginCatpath](#) - creates a "breadcrumbs" trail
- [PluginCatorphans](#) - displays uncategorized pages.

#### Related Modules

- [Module change\\_category](#) Powerful display and modifications of category of current object.
- [Module categories](#) Displays category tree.

#### Related Links

- [Category User](#) - explains how to navigate and search categories
- [Category Admin](#) - how to set up categories, and apply themes and permissions
- [Categories Details](#) - plugins, tweaks and other technical details.

#### Alias

- [Categories](#)
- [Category Tree](#)
- [Facet](#)
- [Facets](#)
- [Faceted classification](#)
- [Categories Admin](#)

#### Related external links

[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Faceted\\_classification](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Faceted_classification)

---

## Score

This feature is a game to motivate people to participate in the community. Users are given points for things they do in the site, like writing an article, reading an article, starting a new topic in forum, voting a poll, etc. They also earn points by being popular, like having his/her blogs and articles read and commented. Then the users will be able to see their position in a ranking.



	USER	SCORE
1)	1045	1045
2)	981	981
3)	626	626
4)	535	535
5)	324	324
6)	25	25
7)	47	47
8)	29	29
9)	17	17
10)	9	9

Module users\_rank from scores


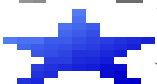





This feature is implemented in version 1.9

## How scoring works

- Users get an amount of points for events related to them
- The amount of points is configurable
- Users are ranked according to points earned
- Events can be repeated or not. For example, earning 5 points for each hour logged in.

## How stars work

Users are awarded color stars depending on their total score:

- grey (  ): between 0 and 99 points.
- blue (  ): between 100 and 499 points.
- green (  ): between 500 and 999 points.
- yellow (  ): between 1,000 and 2,499 points.
- orange (  ): between 2,500 and 4,999 points.
- red (  ): between 5,000 and 9,999 points.
- purple (  ): 10,000 points or more.

## *Typical Uses*

The Score system is good for small and starter sites, to motivate new users to contribute. This can also help administrators to focus activity in one or two areas by granting more points to these areas, so that small communities won't get dispersed with lots of tools in the beginning.

## *Related pages*

- [Module users\\_rank](#)
  - [Score Admin](#)
  - [Score Details](#)
  - [Karma](#)
  - [Score vs Karma](#)
-

# Tags

## Overview

Freetags are the way to solicit content authors and/or users to create a taxonomy structure for your site. Unlike categories, which are pre-defined, Freetags give the authors freedom to define their own structure (or lack of structure - with Freetags you can have "Cars", "Autos", "Automobiles" as tags)

## Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Tags** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=freetags>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Freetags General Settings](#)
- [3D Tag Browser Configuration](#)

## Note

*Categories can be used to create a defined taxonomy structure and to provide access control.  
Freetags can not be used to provide access control.*

## Note

*The following information should be migrated to the Freetags section of the Tiki User and/or Admin Guides*

# Tags

This page is about Freetags, which is the [folksonomy](#) implementation of TikiWiki. The name is based on the name of the underlying library from Gordon Luk: <http://www.getluky.net/freetag/>.

Though similar in function to [categories](#), freetags work somewhat differently. Also, freetags should not be confused with backlinks-to-index style tags discussed further at [How To Tag](#).



Basically folksonomy tagging means/is based on:

- everybody can assign keywords to anything
- bottom-up instead of top-down categorization
- from chaos comes order
- emergent patterns are more powerful than imposition of categories

See: [Multilingual tags](#)

## *What can I tag within Tiki?*

You can currently tag:

- [Wiki](#) pages
- [Blog](#) posts
- [Image gallery](#) & individual images
- [File gallery](#)
- [Trackers](#) & individual tracker items
- [Quiz](#)
- [Polls](#)
- [Surveys](#)
- [Directory](#)
- [Faqs?](#)
- [Spreadsheet](#)
- [Articles](#)

## Modules

- [freetag](#) : that allows to add and remove tag from a current object
- [freetags\\_current](#) : that displays the current tags of an object. Only for a wiki page.
- [freetags\\_prefered](#) : Shows the favorite tags of a user. The number of tags is the value of the parameter rows defined at the module assignment.
- [freetags\\_most\\_popular](#): Shows the most popular tags. The number of tags is the value of the parameter rows defined at the module assignment.
- [freetags\\_morelikethis](#): Shows the objects that have the same tags than an object. Only for a wiki page. The number of objects is the value of the parameter rows defined at the module assignment.

## User

When offered to do so (for instance, editing wiki pages), just enter your tags into the textfield separated by spaces.



You can browse the available tags by clicking on one, when seeing it somewhere.



It will take you to **tiki-browse\_freetags.php** with the tag centered in the moreco browser, if that feature is enabled.



The syntax of a tag is defined by the admin setting. Tags are separated by space(s). If you want to enter a tag with a space - if the admin setting allows it, you must enclose it into double quotes. Example: in the module freetag, if you enter: "computer science" ibm pc, you will add 3 tags "computer science", "ibm" and "pc"

### Note about usage in features different than wiki pages:

For the moment, you can only use freetags in module - the module finds out for what object the freetag has been added looking at the url param.



More information

- <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Folksonomy>
- Some ideas about freetags display: <http://www.smashingmagazine.com/2007/11/07/tag-clouds-gallery-examples-and-good-practices/>

## *Alias*

[tag](#)  
[tagging](#)  
[freetag](#)  
[freetags](#)  
[free tag](#)  
[free tags](#)  
[Folksonomy](#)  
[label](#)  
[labels](#)

---

## *Freetags General Settings tab*

### Overview

This tab is the main place to enable and disable Freetags features and attributes

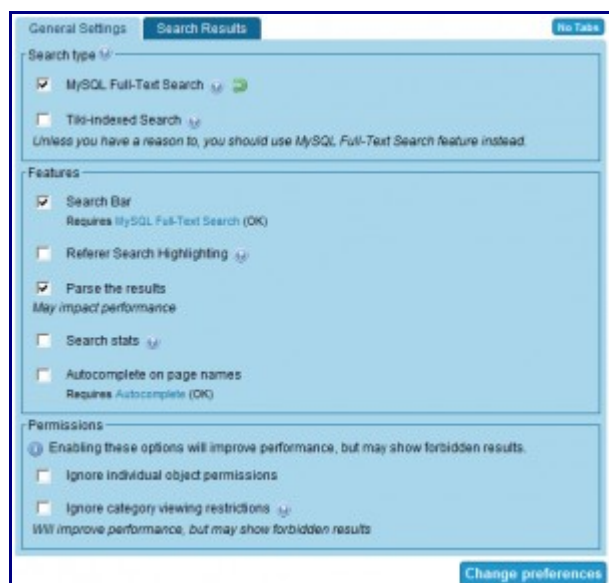
### Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

### To Access

From the [Tags](#) page, click the **General Settings** tab.

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x](#)



## Search General Settings tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Search type</b>		
MySQL Full-Text Search	For Tiki versions 6.x and higher this should be set on if search is to be enabled	
Tiki Indexed Search	Many Tiki versions before supported MySQL. If you need to use this feature refer to the 2.x or 1.x tabs for the individual options which are then enabled	
<b>Features</b>		
Search Bar	Enables the Search Bar, which then normally appears in the Tiki top area	
Referer Search Highlighting	Referrer search highlighting is when a user goes to a search engine such as google or yahoo and performs a search that generates links to your pages. When they click on the link and this feature is active, TikiWiki notices that they have come from a search engine site and highlights the search words they used. The result is similar to using the search using TikiWiki's own search facility.	

## Note

*The following information should be migrated to tabs above once the Tiki version is clearly identified*

## Admin

In order to go to the admin screen, use this url: **tiki-admin.php?page=freetags**

## Freetag Browsing



- **Only accept alphanumeric ASCII freetags (no accents or special chars):** If checked all non-alphabetical characters are withdrawn in the tag. Example: free\_movie will become freemovie.
- **Or valid characters pattern:** It is possible if the previous box is not checked to explicitly tell what characters are not wiped off. Only alphanumeric freetags is the pattern a-zA-Z0-9. If you want to include space and \_, the pattern can look like a-zA-Z \_0-9. For more option <http://www.php.net/manual/en/reference.pcre.pattern.syntax.php>. The character double quote " can not be included in the pattern as it is the character to delimit tags with space.
- **Only accept lowercase freetags** Each uppercase character are replaced by the lowercase character. Example: FreeMovie will become freemovie

## Tag Management



## Freetag 3D Browser Configuration

There is an admin screen, which currently only accepts configuration of the morcego browser for browsing the freetags.



To use the morcego 3D-Network-Browser, you'll have to activate the features:

- Morcego? and
- [Ajax](#)

## Perms

- tiki\_p\_view\_freetags: to view tags
- tiki\_p\_freetags\_tag: to add tags

Table of contents:

---

# Search

## Overview

Search provides a very useful feature for both Tiki administrators, content providers and users.

## Related Topics

- [Search Admin for Older Tiki Versions](#)
- [Search for Users](#)
- [Search Statistics Option](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Search** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

Access **<http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=search>**

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Search General Settings](#)
- [Search Results](#)

## Note

*MySQL Full-Text Search was enabled in earlier versions of Tiki, and from 6.x onwards is the version that should be used (at least until Tiki 8 and something better comes along ;-)*

## Note

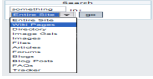
*The following information should be migrated to the Search section of the Tiki User and/or Admin Guides*

# Search

## Help!

If you can't find results that you think should appear, first check the search mode.

# Overview



If the search feature is enabled and you assign the search box module to the left or right side bar, you will see a search box where that you can use to search content in Tiki. The search box module<sup>?</sup> will display a select box allowing you to search for something in a specific content :

- Entire site : sum of all fields below
- Wiki Pages : page name, description, data
- Directory : name, description
- Articles : title, heading, body
- Image Galleries : name, description
- Images : name, description
- File Galleries : name, description
- Files : name, description, search\_data (data produced by the converter))
- Forums : forum posts title and content (name and description with tiki search)
- Blogs : title, description (and user with tiki search)
- Blog posts : title, data (and user with tiki search)
- FAQs : title, description
- FAQs questions : question, answer
- Comments : title, data (and summary for tiki search)

Once you select an option and click the search button you will be redirected to the searchresults page :



In this screen you will see a list of results for the search. The links below the title can be used to search in different areas of Tiki the same way as the search module does. If there are a lot of results you will see links to the next/prev pages at the bottom. The number of items where the search criteria was found can be located just below the links to search different features.

This integrated search engine is very useful to quick-find content or information in Tiki and it will automatically detect which features/sections are enabled or disabled allowing the search only in enabled features. If the Wiki is disabled, for example, you won't be able to find things in Wiki pages.

For more information

- [Search General Settings](#)
  - [Search Results](#)
  
  - [Tiki:SearchDev](#)
- 

## ***Search General Settings tab***

### **Overview**

This tab is the main place to enable and disable search features and attributes

### Related Topics

- [Search Admin for Older Tiki Versions](#)
- [Search for Users](#)
- [Search Statistics Option](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

### **To Access**

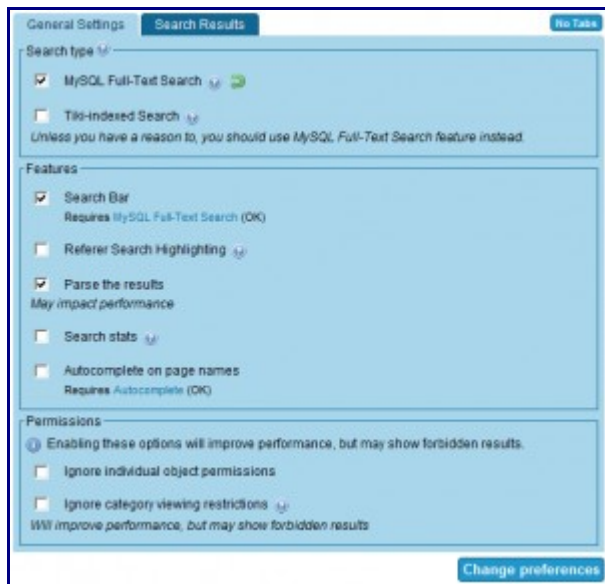
From the [Search](#) page, click the **General Settings** tab.

### **Note**

*For Tiki 6 +, use MySQL Full-Text Search*

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x2.x1.9](#)

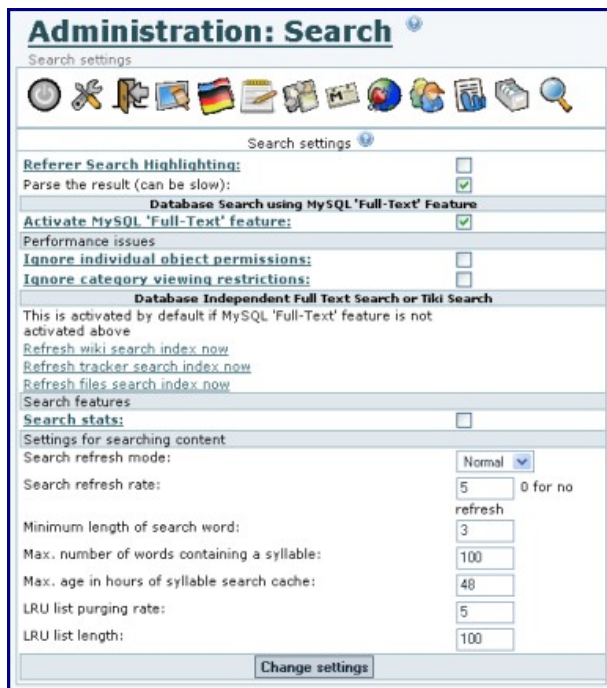




Search General Settings tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Search type</b>		
MySQL Full-Text Search	For Tiki versions 6.x and higher this should be set on if search is to be enabled	
Tiki Indexed Search	Many Tiki versions before supported MySQL. If you need to use this feature refer to the 2.x or 1.x tabs for the individual options which are then enabled	
<b>Features</b>		
Search Bar	Enables the Search Bar, which then normally appears in the Tiki top area	
Referer Search Highlighting	Referrer search highlighting is when a user goes to a search engine such as google or yahoo and performs a search that generates links to your pages. When they click on the link and this feature is active, TikiWiki notices that they have come from a search engine site and highlights the search words they used. The result is similar to using the search using TikiWiki's own search facility.	
Parse the results	When enabled search results are parsed so content formatting is visible in the search results	
Search stats	This option enables administrators to collect and view statistics on search activity	
Autocomplete on page names	This option enables Tiki to automatically complete page names as the user starts typing. For example the user types the start of the wiki page name "Sear" and Tiki returns "Search", "Search General Settings", etc	
Tiki Indexed Search	Many Tiki versions before supported MySQL. If you need to use this feature refer to the 2.x or 1.x tabs for the individual options which are then enabled	
<b>Permissions</b>		
Ignore individual object permissions	This option can improve systems performance but can also result in a search revealing items the user may not be entitled to view	
Ignore category viewing	This option can improve systems performance but can also result in a search revealing items the user may not be entitled to view	

Setting	Description	Default
restrictions		

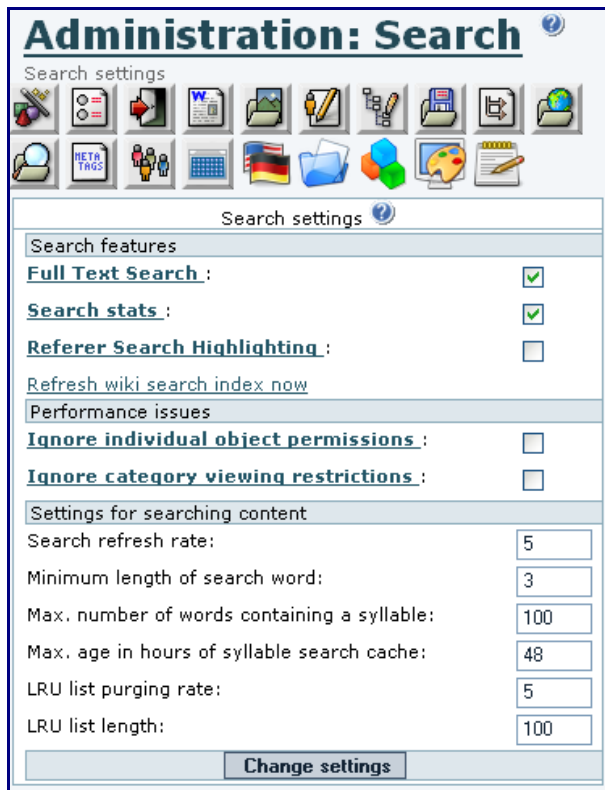


## Search General Settings

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Search settings</b>		
Referer Search Highlighting	Specify if the search results page will highlight the matched words. See <a href="#">Referrer Search Highlighting</a> for details. Note: Selecting this option may negatively affect Tiki search performance.	
Parse the Result	Specify if Tiki should parse the wiki syntax on the search results page. If not selected, the wiki syntax (code) will be shown. Selecting this option may negatively affect Tiki search performance.  This option was introduced in Tiki 2.0	
Activate MySQL Full Text Search	If selected, the search uses a full-text database search. If not selected, the database search is primarily an OR search between searched words. The Tikiwiki search will be refreshed automatically.	
Ignore individual object permissions	This option was introduced in Tiki 2.0  If selected, the database search results will show <b>all</b> matches — even if the user does not have permission to view the specific page. Selecting this option may negatively affect Tiki search performance.	

Setting	Description	Default
Ignore category viewing restrictions	If selected, the database search results will show <b>all</b> matches — even if the user does not have permission to view the specific category. Selecting this option may negatively affect Tiki search performance.	
Search stats	Specify if Tiki records the searched terms for use in the <a href="#">Search Stats</a> page.	
Search Refresh Mode	Specify how Tiki determines the search refresh index: <b>Normal</b> or <b>Random</b> .  Note: This option applies only if the <b>Activate MySQL Full Text Feature</b> is <i>not</i> enabled.	
Search refresh rate	Specify how often Tikiwiki should refresh the search engine: the bigger is the number, the less often one random object is indexed. At each access to a page of the site, a random number between 1 and the refresh rate is computed. If this number is 1, a random object is indexed. Starting with Tiki 2.0, the index is refreshed in real time.  Note: This option applies only if the <b>Activate MySQL Full Text Feature</b> is <i>not</i> enabled. Specify the minimum number of characters of the search word.	
Minimum length of search word	Note: This option applies only if the <b>Activate MySQL Full Text Feature</b> is <i>not</i> enabled. When using the MySQL Full Text Search, you must specify the word length in the MySQL configuration by using the <b>ft_min_word_len</b> variable. See the <a href="#">MySQL documentation</a> for details.	
Max. number of words containing a syllable	only for the db independent search.  Note: This option applies only if the <b>Activate MySQL Full Text Feature</b> is <i>not</i> enabled.	
Max. age in hours of syllable search cache	only for the db independent search.  Note: This option applies only if the <b>Activate MySQL Full Text Feature</b> is <i>not</i> enabled.	
LRU list purging rate	only for the db independent search.  Note: This option applies only if the <b>Activate MySQL Full Text Feature</b> is <i>not</i> enabled.	
LRU list length	only for the db independent search.  Note: This option applies only if the <b>Activate MySQL Full Text Feature</b> is <i>not</i> enabled.	

{FANCYTABLE}



## Search General Settings

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Search Features</b>		
Full text search	If selected, the search uses a full-text database search; if not, the database search is primarily an OR search between searched words, the Tikiwiki search will be refreshed automatically in tikiwiki >=1.10	
Search stats	Specify if Tiki records the searched terms for use in the <a href="#">Search Stats</a> page.	
<a href="#">Referrer search highlighting</a>	Specify if the results highlight the matched words. Note: Selecting this option may negatively affect Tiki search performance.	
Refresh wiki search index now	select to refresh the search index of a Tikiwiki search. Note: Use the <b>Refresh...</b> option only for small sites — larger sties should use a cron batch job.	
<b>Performance issues</b>		
Ignore individual object permissions	If selected, the database search results will show <b>all</b> matches — even if the user does not have permission to view the specific page.	
Ignore category viewing restrictions	If selected, the database search results will show <b>all</b> matches — even if the user does not have permission to view the specific category. Note: These options may negatively affect Tiki search performance.	
<b>Settings for searching content</b>		
Search refresh rate	Used only for the tiki search feature - larger numbers result in search indexs	

Setting	Description	Default
	occurring less often. In tikiwiki>=1.10, the indexation is refreshed in real time (if full text option is unchecked).	
Minimum length of search word	only for the database independent search. For Mysql fulltext you must do it in the MySQL configuration.	
Max. number of words containing a syllable	only for the db independent search.	
Max. age in hours of syllable search cache	only for the db independent search.	
LRU list purging rate only for the db independent search.		
LRU list length	only for the db independent search. Note: LRU (Least Recently Used) is search engine technique implemented in Oracle, Java and others. It may also be known as a "search cache"	

## Search Results tab

### Overview

This tab is where the Administrator selects the appropriate results for a user search

### Related Topics

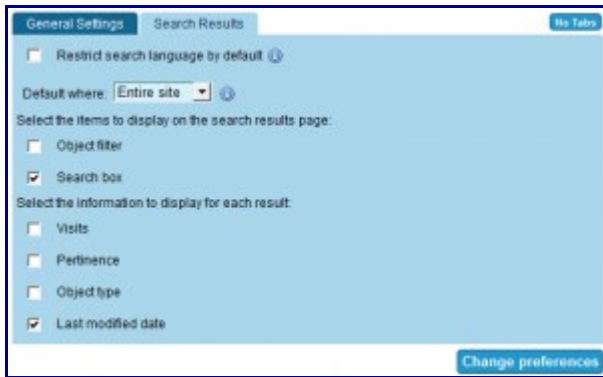
- [Search Admin for Older Tiki Versions](#)
- [Search for Users](#)
- [Search Statistics Option](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

### To Access

From the [Search](#) page, click the **Search Results** tab.

### [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x](#)



Search Results tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Search Results</b>		
Restrict search language by default:	Search results are not normally restricted by language, but will be if this option is enabled	
Default where:	Select whether searches are restricted by language everywhere, or for wiki pages or for trackers	Entire site
<b>Select the information to display on the search results page</b>		
Object filter	This option enables Object type filters to be displayed above the search results to further reduce search results by object type	
Search box	This option enables a search box to be displayed above the search results to do additional searches	enabled
<b>Select the information to display for each result</b>		
Visits	Include the number of visits in the search results	
Pertinence	Tiki estimates the relevance of the search results, and this feature enables display of that value	
Object type	When enabled the types of objects are included in the search results	
Last modified date	When enabled the last modified date of the objects are included in the search results	

# FAQs

## Overview

The FAQ feature is a way to create one or more structured FAQs or Frequently Asked Questions

## Related Topics

- [User guide for FAQs](#)
- [Module top\\_visited\\_faqs](#)
- [Module last\\_created\\_faqs](#)
- [Our Wiki FAQ all about Tiki](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **FAQs** icon



on the [Admin Panel](#)

or

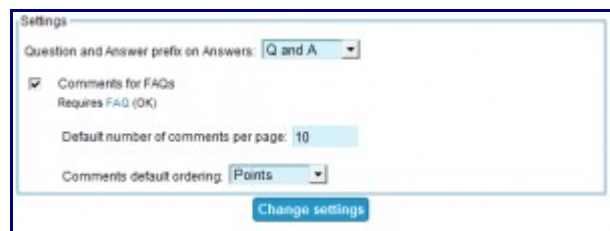
Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=faqs>

## Note

*The FAQ feature has been deprecated and should not be used for any new Tiki sites. Typically FAQs are being replaced either by Forums (users self support) or Wikis (output to users from answer creators) or Articles (CMS) or Trackers (create your own forms and functionality)*

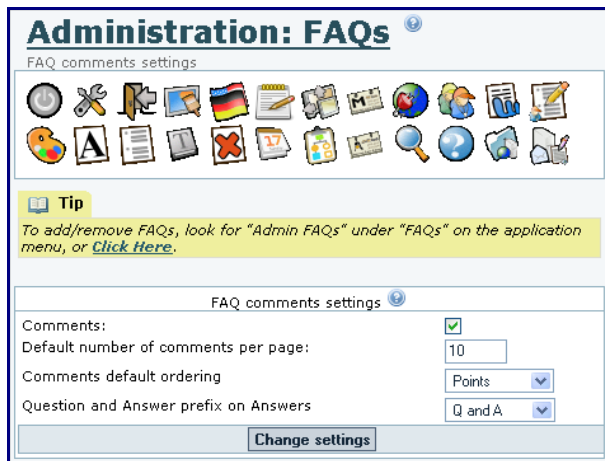
## No Tabs

### 6.x2.x1.x



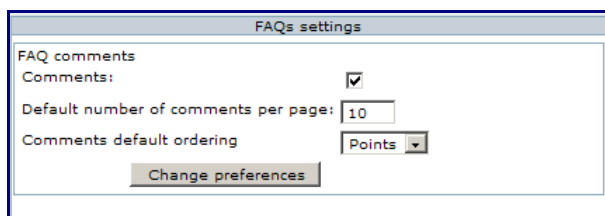
## FAQs feature

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Settings</b>		
Questions and Answer prefix on Answers:	Select the appropriate prefix for your requirement	Q and A
Comments for FAQs:	Enable comments for FAQs	enabled
Default number of comments per page:	How many comments should appear per FAQ page	10
Comments default ordering:	Select the appropriate ordering for comments	Points



## FAQs feature

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Faq Comment Settings</b>		
Comments:	Specify if users (with <a href="#">permission</a> ) can post or reply to <a href="#">comments</a> about the FAQ questions. If enabled, the comments will appear at the bottom of the page.	enabled
Default number of comments per page:	If the <b>Comments</b> option is enabled, use this field to specify the maximum number of comments to display on each page. Users may override this number.	10
Comments default ordering:	If the <b>Comments</b> option is enabled, specify in which order to list the comments on the page: <b>Newest first</b> <b>Oldest first</b> <b>Points</b> : Comments earn points when users read the comment and vote on its usefulness.	points
Question and Answer prefix on Answers:	Users may override this option and order comments in any method. Select the prefix for that Tiki should display for each FAQ answer: <b>None</b> <b>Q and A</b> (default) <b>Question ID</b>	Q and A



## FAQs feature

head="Setting      Description      Default" **Faq**



**Comment Settings**

Comments:	Specify if users (with <a href="#">permission</a> ) can post or reply to <a href="#">comments</a> about the FAQ questions. If enabled, the comments will appear at the bottom of the page.	
Default number of comments per page:	If the <b>Comments</b> option is enabled, use this field to specify the maximum number of comments to display on each page. Users may override this number.	10
Comments default ordering:	<p>If the <b>Comments</b> option is enabled, specify in which order to list the comments on the page:</p> <p><b>Newest first</b></p> <p><b>Oldest first</b></p> <p><b>Points:</b> Comments earn points when users read the comment and vote on its usefulness.</p> <p>Users may override this option and order comments in any method.</p>	points

---

# Directory

## Overview

The Directory is used to collect and display web site links categorized by topic for browsing by users.

## Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

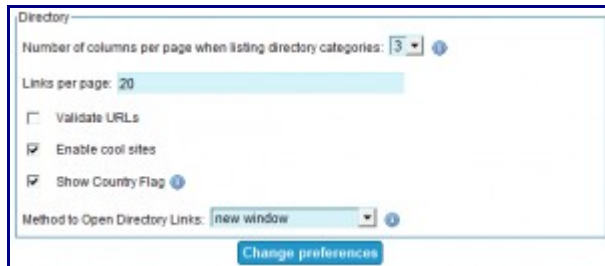
## To access

Click the **Directory** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=directory>

## No Tabs

### 6.x



## Directory feature

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Directory</b>		
Number of columns per page when listing directory categories:	select the required number of columns per page (range 1-6):	3
Links per page	How many links should be displayed per page	20
Validate URLs	Should Tiki check the URL?	
Enable cool sites:	Turn on the cool sites feature	enabled
Show Country Flag:	Turn on the Country Flag Display feature	enabled
Method to Open Directory Links:	Tiki 6.x selections are "new window", "replace existing window",and "inline frame"	

**Note**

The following content will eventually be migrated to the Directory section of the Tiki User and Admin Guides.

- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- [General Administration](#)
- [General Preferences tab](#)
- [General Settings tab](#)
- [Navigation tab](#)
- [Date and Time tab](#)
  - [Date and Time Formats](#)
- [Change Admin Password tab](#)
- [Features Admin](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.10\)](#)
    - [Major features](#)
    - [Minor features](#)
    - [Site-wide features](#)
    - [Technical Features](#)
    - [User interface enhancement features](#)
    - [Experimental Features](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
    - [User Features](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.9.x\)](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
      - [User Features](#)
- [General Layout options](#)
  - [Layout-per-section Options](#)
- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Login Administration page](#)

- [General Preferences](#)
  - [Case Sensitivity](#)
  - [Remember Me](#)
  - [Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity](#)
  - [CustomFields](#)
- [LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4](#)
  - [Changes](#)
  - [Settings](#)
- [LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X](#)
  - [LDAP §fe70dcc7b334983be9d46331092db03d§ General Settings Overview](#)
- [LDAP Authentication tab](#)
  - [How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use](#)
  - [How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Unix](#)
    - [Active Directory](#)
    - [Zimbra LDAP](#)
  - [Debugging](#)
  - [Common Problems and Workarounds](#)
    - [Certificate Problems](#)
  - [How it works](#)
    - [Group membership and permissions](#)
    - [How anonymous binding works](#)
  - [LDAP §b22ccde9d2a65de3a894a23f4dfd1551§ Troubleshooting](#)
- [Aliases](#)
- [PAM Authentication tab](#)
  - [AuthPAM](#)
    - [Admin Documentation](#)
    - [Requirements for AuthPAM](#)
    - [Permissions!](#)
    - [Security Issues](#)
  - [Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki](#)
  - [Shibboleth step 2:Update Shibboleth](#)
  - [Intro](#)
    - [Mod phpcas](#)
  - [Notes from successful install \(with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4\)](#)
    - [Install](#)
- [CAS Authentication tab](#)
  - [Requirements for phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [Enabling phpBB Authentication](#)

- [phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration](#)
  - [phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options](#)
- [Community Administration](#)
- [User Features tab](#)
- [Community General Settings Tab](#)
  - [General Description](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Typical Uses](#)
- [Friendship Network tab](#)
- [Admin Profiles Page](#)
  - [For more information](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
- [Apply Profiles tab](#)
- [Profiles Advanced tab](#)
- [Look & Feel](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
    - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [Theme tab](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
    - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [General Layout Options tab](#)
- [Shadow Layer tab](#)
- [Pagination Links tab](#)
- [UI Effects tab](#)
- [Custom CSS tab](#)
- [Miscellaneous tab](#)
- [Internationalization \(i18n\)](#)
  - [Overview](#)

- [Babelfish Links](#)
- [Customized String Translation tab](#)
  - [Feature Modules](#)
  - [User's Configuration Modules](#)
  - [Navigation Modules](#)
  - [Recent Changes Modules](#)
  - ["Best of" Modules](#)
  - [Help and Support Modules](#)
  - [Search Modules](#)
  - [MyTiki Modules](#)
  - [Miscellaneous Modules](#)
- [Modules](#)
  - [Modules vs. Plugins](#)
  - [Related pages](#)
- [Tiki Modules](#)
  - [More information.](#)
- [Meta Tags Config](#)
- [Meta Tags Configuration page](#)
- [Performance Admin page](#)
- [Performance Tab](#)
- [Bytecode Cache Tab](#)
- [Wiki tab](#)
- [Database tab](#)
- [Memcache tab](#)
- [Plugins tab](#)
- [Major Slowdown tab](#)
- [Sessions tab](#)
  - [General Security](#)
  - [Spam Protection](#)
  - [Search Results](#)
  - [Site Access](#)
  - [Tokens](#)
  - [Clipperz Online Password Management](#)
- [Security Administration](#)
  - [Prevent automatic/robot registration](#)
- [Spam Protection tab](#)
- [Clipperz online password manager](#)
- [Comments Admin page](#)
- [Comments](#)
- [Alias](#)

- [Feeds Admin page](#)
- [Feeds](#)
  - [Overview](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Setting up feeds](#)
  - [More information](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Feeds General Preferences tab](#)
- [Feeds](#)
- [Connect page](#)
  - [Calculation configuration](#)
- [Advanced Ratings page](#)
- [Advanced Rating](#)
  - [Sorting items according to advanced rating](#)
  - [Set-up](#)
  - [Reference](#)
    - [mul \(Multiply\)](#)
    - [add \(Sum\)](#)
    - [rating-average and rating-sum](#)
    - [str](#)
    - [article-info](#)
    - [attribute](#)
  - [Appendix](#)
- [Related](#)
- [Wiki Admin page](#)
  - [Dumps](#)
- [Wiki General Preferences tab](#)
- [Wiki Features tab](#)
  - [Admin preferences and setup](#)
- [Wiki Staging & Approval tab](#)
- [Wiki Page Staging and Approval](#)
  - [Sample use case](#)
    - [Features that will be apparent](#)
    - [Important notes about creating new pages](#)
    - [Important admin notes](#)
  - [Limitations](#)
  - [Profile](#)
- [Wiki Page Listings tab](#)
- [File Galleries](#)
  - [Key features](#)

- [File Gallery improvements in Tiki6](#)
- [File Gallery improvements in Tiki5](#)
- [File Gallery improvements in Tiki3](#)
- [From Here](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [See Also](#)
- [Blogs](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
  - [About Trackback](#)
  - [About XMLRPC](#)
  - [Blog Revamp](#)
- [Image Galleries](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
- [Articles](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
    - [Topics](#)
    - [Article Types](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Forums](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
- [Trackers \(Overview\)](#)
  - [What are Trackers?](#)
  - [Related Pages](#)
  - [Four Steps to make a Tracker](#)
  - [What can Trackers be used for?](#)
  - [Demos of Trackers used for production](#)
  - [Related links](#)
  - [Profiles](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Polls](#)
  - [Related Pages](#)
  - [Using Polls](#)
    - [Polls as a Plugin](#)
    - [Polls as a Side Module](#)
    - [Permissions](#)
    - [Polls and Anonymous](#)
- [Poll templates](#)
- [Calendar](#)
- [New in version 2 and version 3](#)
- [General](#)



- [Example](#)
- [Categories](#)
  - [Category Permissions](#)
- [Score](#)
  - [How scoring works](#)
  - [How stars work](#)
  - [Typical Uses](#)
  - [Related pages](#)
- [Tags](#)
- [Tags](#)
  - [What can I tag within Tiki?](#)
  - [Modules](#)
  - [User](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Freetags General Settings tab](#)
  - [Admin](#)
    - [Freetag Browsing](#)
    - [Tag Management](#)
    - [Freetag 3D Browser Configuration](#)
  - [Perms](#)
- [Search](#)
- [Search](#)
- [Overview](#)
- [Search General Settings tab](#)
- [Search Results tab](#)
- [FAQs](#)
- [Directory](#)
- [Directory](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)

# Directory

The Directory is used to collect and display web site links categorized by topic for browsing by users. It is similar to the DMOZ Open Directory Project and Google's Directory (see Useful Links, below).

The user can browse through categories, making use of category and link descriptions, and navigate to increasingly specific subcategories. A search form can also be used to locate a link in the Directory.

Users can submit links to be added to the Directory. The submitted links can be subject to validation by admins or designated editors before they are added.

Any number of categories can be created and each can be indicated as related to one or more other categories. Tiki tracks the addition of new links and the number of visits to each link, as well as the number of searches made. Users can also view "new sites" and "cool sites" (most-visited sites).

Directory information can also be displayed as modules in Tiki's side columns or wiki pages, and new Directory links can be reported in Tiki's Calendar.

## *Feature Overview*

TikiWiki's Directory feature enables:

- Organization of Web site links into categories
- Searches for links
- Submission by users of link suggestions for approval by admins
- Appointment of editors to moderate specific categories
- Caching of linked Web sites to avoid the problem of dead links or temporarily unavailable servers
- Display of top-ranked sites in terms of hits
- Display of most recently added sites
- Indication of top-ranked and recently added sites in a Tiki module
- Association of Directory categories with one another and/or with one or more global Tiki Categories

### More Documentation

- [Directory User](#) How to use the Directory once it has been activated and configured.
- [Directory Admin](#) How to activate and configure the Directory, including determining its organization and page display, and setting appropriate permissions.
- [Directory Details](#) Details on Directory internals, including information on related files, permissions, database tables and CSS selectors.

- Directory TikiMovie: Flash movie on how to set up and use the Directory, click by click [http://www.teluguvaariki.com/sri-addons/tikiwiki\\_videos/Directory/](http://www.teluguvaariki.com/sri-addons/tikiwiki_videos/Directory/)

#### Useful Links

These are other examples of and information about Web directories.

- DMOZ Open Directory Project  
<http://www.dmoz.org>
- Google Directory  
<http://directory.google.com/>
- Wikipedia "Directory" entry  
<http://en2.wikipedia.org/wiki/Directory>

#### alias

- [Directories](#)
-

# Maps

## Overview

This feature enables Tiki to connect to your own map server and provide map functions.

## Related Topics

- [Install your Map server first!](#)
- [Tutorial on the Mapfile Server](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Maps** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

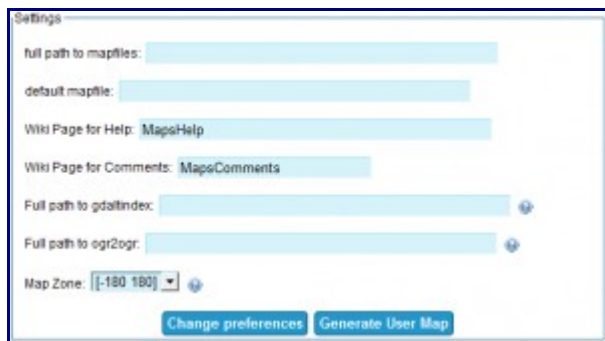
Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=maps>

## Note

This is NOT Google maps. You must first install your own Map Server to enable this feature

## No Tabs

### 6.x



## Maps

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Settings</b>		
full path to mapfiles:	the location where the .map files are on the server. Remember to end it with a / to eliminate path problems	
default mapfile:	the default map to display after selecting maps on the application menu	
Wiki Page for Help:	The wiki page to explain how the maps interface is working	MapsHelp

Setting	Description	Default
Wiki Page for Comments:	The wiki page to insert map comments	MapsComments
Full path to gdaltindex:	the path (on this server) to gdaltindex directory, where Tiki will create the tiled shapefile of images	
Full path to ogr2ogr:	the path (on this server) to the ogr2ogr binary directory, where Tiki will create shapefiles containing user position (My Preferences) or image position (Image Galleries)	
Map Zone:	select the required zone, in degrees	-180 180
Change preferences	select to save the above settings	
Generate User Map	select to create a shapefile containing the position of all the registered users who have indicated a latitude and longitude in their preferences	

---

# Google Maps

## Overview

The Google Maps function provides support for the Google Maps Plugin and the Google Maps Tracker Field.

## Related Topics

- [Google page map plugin](#)
- [Google Maps Tracker Field](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

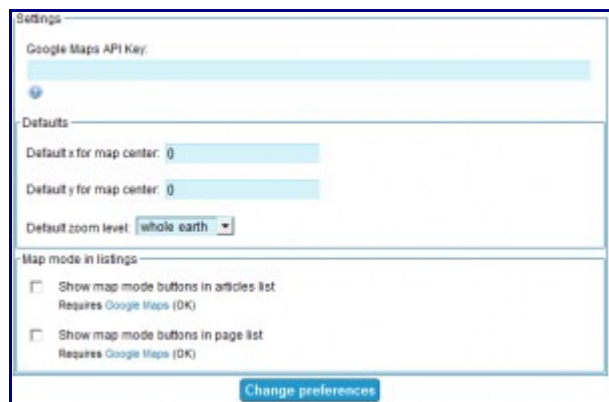
Click the **Google Maps** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)

or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=gmaps>

## No Tabs

### 6.x



## Site Ads and Banner

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Settings</b>		
Google Maps API Key:	Go to Google to get your <a href="#">Maps API Key</a>	
<b>Defaults</b>		
Default x for map center:	To get the following X and Y coordinates, you can go to Google Maps, turn on the latlng marker if needed, select where you want to center the map, right click and drop the marker. You can then copy the x and y coordinates.	
Default y for map	Paste the X coordinate for the map center in this field	
	Paste the Y coordinate for the map center in this field	

Setting	Description	Default
center:		
Default zoom level:	Select your default zoom level here	
<b>Map mode in listings</b>		
Show map mode buttons in articles list:	Enable Google Map buttons in Articles	
Show map mode buttons in pages list:	Enable Google Map buttons in Wiki	

---

# Copyright

## Overview

The Copyright Management System (or ©MS) is a way of licensing your content, typically under an open or free content license, such as the Gnu Free Documentation License or the Open Game License.

## Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Copywrite** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)

or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=copyright>

## No Tabs

### 6.x



## Site Ads and Banner

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Copyright Management</b>		
License Page:	Name of the Wiki page where the licenses are stored	
Submit notice:	Text to appear when content is being submitted	
<b>Enable copyright management for:</b>		
Wiki:	Enable copyright management to apply to the wiki feature	
Articles:	Enable copyright management to apply to the Articles feature	
Blogues:	Enable copyright management to apply to the Blog feature	



Setting	Description	Default
Faqs:	Enable copyright management to apply to the Faq feature	

**Note**

*The remaining content needs to be moved to the Copyright section of the Tiki User or Administrator Guides and referenced back here*


# Copyright Management User

The Copyright Management System (or ©MS) is a way of licensing your content, typically under and open or free content license, such as the Gnu Free Documentation License or the Open Game License. By switching this feature on you can define a content license for all your wiki content, associate copyright notices with individual pages and even display a full license for printing.

Also see

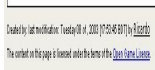
[PluginCopyright](#)

The Copyright Management System (©MS) allows you to specify a content license under which all wiki pages are published when submitted. When this feature is activated by an administrator, new form elements appear on the Wiki Edit Page :



This allows users submitting content to attach a copyright notice to the page. The user enters the title of work being copyright (which may or may not be different to the page title), the year of copyright and the author(s) associated with the content.

Normal users can only add copyright notices to a page, and only administrators can delete or modify submitted ones. Copyright notices can then be recalled using the Copyright Notice Plugin. This is normally only done in the license page. To view the license for a particular page click on the license link at the bottom of the page, for example:



This will take you to the license (in this case the OpenGameLicense) for that page. Depending on how the administrator has set-up the license you may also be able to peruse all the copyright pages for that page as well.

Similarly, clicking on the PrintIcon will now take you to a full print-out of your page content *and* the license under which it is published.

## Editing Copyright Notices

The ©MS uses the permission tiki\_p\_edit\_copyrights which allows users to access the copyrights edit page. To access the copyrights edit page for a particular page, go to the license page for that page and click on the link at the bottom of the page:



If you have permissions this will take you to the copyright edits page where you can edit the copyright notices for that page:



This page allows administrators to alter the order of copyright notices, edit their data or add new copyright notices.

To edit a copyright notice simply alter the information in the text boxes and click the 'edit' button on the right-hand side.

To delete a copyright notice click on the 'x' on the right-hand side.

To move a copyright notice's order click on 'up' or 'down' on the right-hand side.

To add a new copyright notice simply fill in the information in the empty text boxes at the bottom of this page, as you would adding a copyright notice in the wiki edit page above, and click the 'add' button.

### Useful Links

- Creative Commons  
<http://creativecommons.org/>
- GNU/FDL  
<http://www.fsf.org/copyleft/fdl.html>
- Open Game License  
<http://www.opengamingfoundation.org/ogl.html>
- Open Publication License  
<http://opencontent.org/openpub/>

# User Files

## Overview

This section is used to let users upload files and store them in their tiki personal space, they can then download the files.

## Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Webmail** icon



on the [Admin Panel](#)

or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=userfiles>

## Note

*This feature is created by the Communities Profile - you may need to load Communities before you can turn on and administer this feature.*

## No Tabs

### 6.x



## User Files

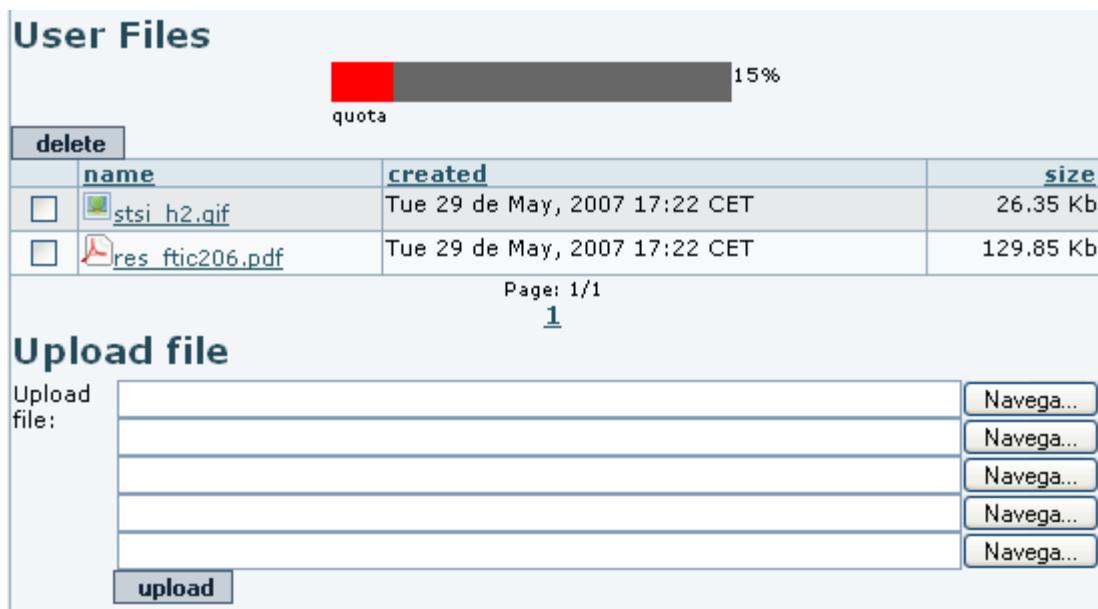
Setting	Description	Default
<b>Settings</b>		
Quota (Mb):	Maximum per user storage capacity	
Use database to store userfiles:	MySQL database is used to store the files. This will be necessary if your host does not support file storage, but if there are many users there could be a performance impact	
Use a directory to store userfiles:	Store files directly in a host directory. Gives better performance than the database option, but you will need to backup that directory separately	
Path:	Relative or absolute path to the User Files storage directory	

**Note**

*The remaining content needs to be moved to the User section of the Tiki User Files section of the User or Administrator Guides and referenced back here*



# User Files

This feature is used to let users upload files and store them in their tiki personal space, they can then download the files.



**User Files**

quota 15%

	name	created	size
<input type="checkbox"/>	 stsi_h2.gif	Tue 29 de May, 2007 17:22 CET	26.35 Kb
<input type="checkbox"/>	 res_ftic206.pdf	Tue 29 de May, 2007 17:22 CET	129.85 Kb

Page: 1/1  
1

**Upload file**

Upload file:

The screen is very simple users can upload files, download them and delete them as they want. The quota and where files are stored can be configured from the userfiles section of the admin menu illustrated below:

## Configuring userfiles



As you can see you can setup the quota in Mbs for each user and decide where to store user files, either the database or a directory. The path can be absolute or relative to the tiki directory, and must have a trailing slash. Example files/

# Messages

## Overview

The Messages function allows users to send internal messages to each other.

## Related Topics

- [Inter-User Messages](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

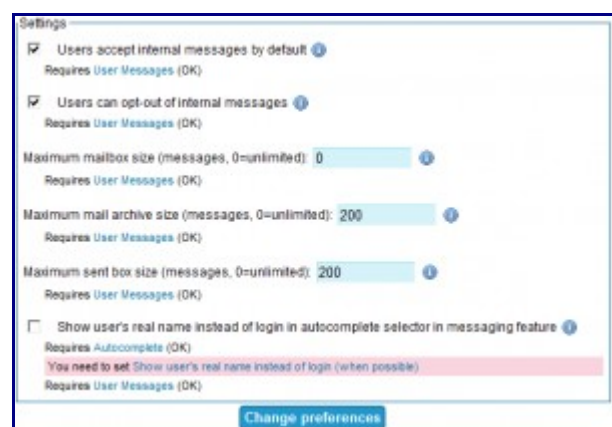
## To access

Click the **Messages** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=messages>

## No Tabs

### 6.x



## User Messages

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Settings</b>		
Users accept internal messages by default:	Users default to accepting messages with this option	enabled
Users can opt-out of internal messages:	Users are allowed to block messages with this option	enabled
Maximum mailbox size (messages, 0=unlimited):	Maximum number of messages allowed in a users mailbox	0 (unlimited)
Maximum mailbox archive size (messages, 0=unlimited):	Maximum number of messages allowed in a users archive mailbox	200

Setting	Description	Default
Maximum sent mailbox size (messages, 0=unlimited):	Maximum number of messages allowed in a users sent mailbox	200
Show user's real name instead of login in autocomplete selector in messaging feature:	Show user's real rather than login name if enabled	

---



# Webmail

## Overview

The Webmail function provides a webmail service for users if enabled.

## Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Webmail** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#) or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=webmail>

## No Tabs

### 6.x



## Site Ads and Banner

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Settings</b>		
Allow viewing HTML mails?:	Enable HTML emails with this option	enabled
Maximum size for each attachment:	Select the maximum attachment size	
Include a flag by each e-mail to quickly flag/un-flag them?:	Enable easy selecting multiple mails for common actions	

## Note

*The remaining content needs to be moved to the webmail section of the Tiki User or Administrator Guides and referenced back here*

# Webmail

The webmail feature can be used to offer a web-based interface to your users webmail accounts, note that Tiki is not a mail server, your users should already have email addresses before being able to use webmail. Any POP3 accessible mail account can be used from Tiki.



Starting in [Tiki4](#), Webmail feature allows using imap, even with ssl, and smtp configuration, as well as using it in conjunction with the new [Groupmail](#) feature.



## Configuring webmail accounts

After enabling webmail from the features section of the admin panel you will be able to enter the webmail section from the application menu. In your first visit to the webmail you will be automatically redirected to the webmail configuration panel.

*insert graphic*

In this panel you can configure as many webmail accounts as you want, you also have to select the account that you want to use by clicking its name. Note that the current webmail account will be displayed in bold text. The information you need to setup a webmail account is very similar to the information you need for other mail clients such as Outlook express so the user will be familiarized with the settings.

## Reading emails

The mailbox icon will take you to the INBOX of your current mail account. In this screen you will be able to see your emails, read them and manipulate them:

*insert graphic*

Clicking on an email will take you to the screen where you can read the email.

### *insert graphic*

Mails that you already read are displayed in a different background than unread emails. You can select some emails using checkboxes and delete them, mark them for followup or mark them as read/unread. You can use filters to display only unread mails or only flagged emails.

## ***Writing emails***

The compose icon let's you compose an email and send it using your SMTP configuration. The screen will be the following:

### *insert graphic*

Note that you can use addresses from your address book by clicking the "to", "cc" or "bcc" links in the compose email screen.

### *insert graphic*

You can attach up to three files to an email each attachment will have a maximum size that admin can configure. If your email server has limitations about email attachment size you should observe them since Tiki cannot override them.

### *insert graphic*

You can send HTML email using Tiki just write the tags in the email using < b >, < i > and so...  
Managing contacts Whenever an email is sent Tiki will check the addresses and if they are not in your address book will offer you to add the addresses to your address book.

### *insert graphic*

The address book can be managed clicking on the contacts icon in the webmail screen. You can assign a nickname to an address and use it when sending an email, Tiki will automatically replace the nickname with the email address when it can.

### *insert graphic*

Links

- [Groupmail](#)

# WYSIWYG

## Overview

The Wysiwyg (What you see is what you get) feature provides a user friendly editing alternative to the WIKI syntax editor.

## To access

Click the **Wysiwyg** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=wysiwyg>

## Related Topics

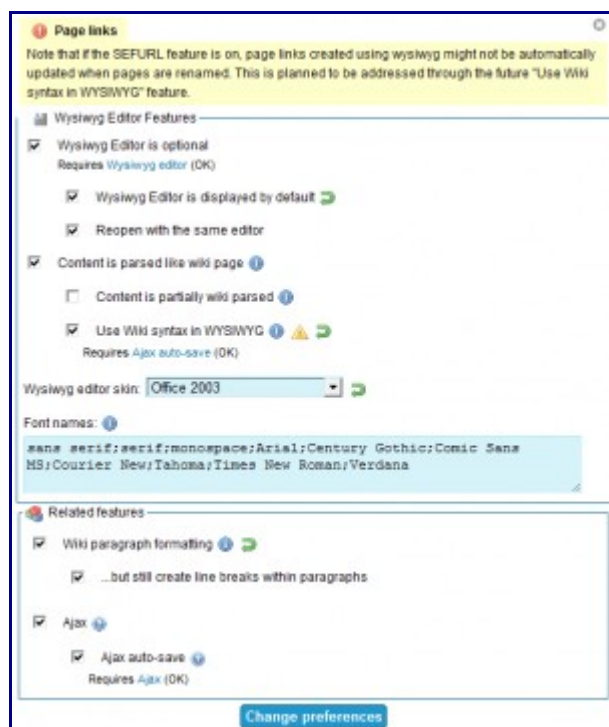
- [Wysiwyg Editor User](#)
- [Wysiwyg Editor Details](#)
- [Wysiwyg Editor Admin](#)
- [WysiwygPluginButton](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## Note

*Tiki now uses CKEditor, whilst versions previous to 6.0 used FCKeditor*

[No Tabs](#)

[6.x](#)



## Search Engine Friendly URL

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Wysiwyg Editor Features</b>		
Wysiwyg Editor is optional:	Enabling this feature allows users to switch between WIKI and Wysiwyg editors	
Wysiwyg Editor is displayed by default:	Enabling this feature selects the Wysiwyg editor as the default	
Reopen with the same editor:	Enabling this feature ensures the editor last used to edit a page or item is used for the next edit as the default	enabled
Content is parsed like a wiki page:	Enabling this feature ensures pages and items created using the Wysiwyg editor would also include Wiki parsing for plugins and inline character styles (but see next option)	
Content is partially wiki parsed:	Enabling this feature ensures pages and items created using the Wysiwyg editor would also include Wiki parsing for plugins BUT NOT some other wiki syntax such as inline character styles (above option must be enabled)	
Use Wiki syntax in WYSIWYG:	Enabling this feature is experimental in 6.x. Wiki syntax can also be used when using Wysiwyg editor, but the handy Plugin Editor then only works in Wysiwyg Source mode (note: <i>Ajax auto-save</i> must be enabled if using this feature)	
Wysiwyg editor skin:	Select your preferred Wysiwyg Editor Skin	
Font names:	List of Font Names - note: must be separated by the ; (semi-colon character)	
<b>Related Features</b>		
Wiki paragraph	Enabling this feature affects whether multiple lines appear as a paragraph or not	

Setting	Description	Default
formatting: But still create line breaks within paragraphs:	When Wiki paragraph formatting is enabled, this option creates line breaks within paragraphs	enabled
Ajax:	Enabling Ajax allows page updates without having the Tiki site having to perform a browser refresh	
Ajax auto-save:	Enabling this feature allows the Wiki service to automatically save edits	

**Note**

*The following information will be moved to the Tiki User and Administrator Guides*

# Wysiwyg Editor

If enabled at *Admin > Features*, editing wiki pages can be achieved in a visual manner, thanks to an integrated [FCKeditor](http://www.fckeditor.net) (<http://www.fckeditor.net>), from Tikiwiki version 1.10 onwards, or CKEditor from [Tiki6](#) onwards. This means that information can be copied and pasted from a word processing program (or web page, etc.) right into the wiki page keeping most (if not all) the markup of your document.

---

# Site Ads and Bannders

## Overview

Banners are a common way to display advertisements and notices on a Web page

## Related Topics

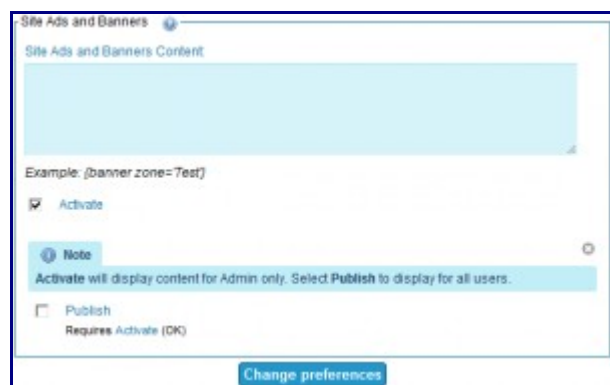
- [Banner Administration](#)
- [PluginBanner](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Site Ads and Banners** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or  
Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=ads>

## No Tabs

## 6.x



## Site Ads and Banner

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Site Ads and Banners</b>		
Site Ads and Banners Content:	Define the banner zone here(Banners must be assigned to a Zone, which is essentially a label). For example {banner zone="TopHeader"} to create a zone called TopHeader. See <a href="#">Banner Administration</a> for more details	
Activate:	Make the Banner visible to Admin	
Publish:	Make the Banner visible to all site visitors (note Activate must be turned on for Publish to take effect)	





# Intertiki

## Overview

The Intertiki feature allows different Tikis to communicate user data with each other.

## Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Intertiki** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=intertiki>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Intertiki Client](#)
- [Intertiki Server](#)

## Note

*The information below pertains to using and administering the Intertiki feature. Eventually it will be moved to the new User and Administrator Guides*

[needs review](#) made major changes to descriptive text, added section for explaining Intertiki fields in detail and mentioned dependency on Log-In authentication type on clients

## Table of contents

- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- [General Administration](#)
- [General Preferences tab](#)
- [General Settings tab](#)
- [Navigation tab](#)
- [Date and Time tab](#)

- [Date and Time Formats](#)
- [Change Admin Password tab](#)
- [Features Admin](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.10\)](#)
    - [Major features](#)
    - [Minor features](#)
    - [Site-wide features](#)
    - [Technical Features](#)
    - [User interface enhancement features](#)
    - [Experimental Features](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
    - [User Features](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.9.x\)](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
      - [User Features](#)
- [General Layout options](#)
  - [Layout-per-section Options](#)
- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Login Administration page](#)
- [General Preferences](#)
  - [Case Sensitivity](#)
  - [Remember Me](#)
  - [Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity](#)
  - [CustomFields](#)
- [LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4](#)
  - [Changes](#)
  - [Settings](#)
- [LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X](#)
  - [LDAP \\$fe70dcc7b334983be9d46331092db03d\\$ General Settings Overview](#)
- [LDAP Authentication tab](#)
  - [How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use](#)
  - [How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki](#)
  - [Examples](#)

- [Unix](#)
  - [Active Directory](#)
  - [Zimbra LDAP](#)
- [Debugging](#)
- [Common Problems and Workarounds](#)
  - [Certificate Problems](#)
- [How it works](#)
  - [Group membership and permissions](#)
  - [How anonymous binding works](#)
- [LDAP §b22ccde9d2a65de3a894a23f4dfd1551§ Troubleshooting](#)
- [Aliases](#)
- [PAM Authentication tab](#)
  - [AuthPAM](#)
    - [Admin Documentation](#)
    - [Requirements for AuthPAM](#)
    - [Permissions!](#)
    - [Security Issues](#)
  - [Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki](#)
  - [Shibboleth step 2:Update Shibboleth](#)
- [Intro](#)
  - [Mod phpcas](#)
- [Notes from successful install \(with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4\)](#)
  - [Install](#)
- [CAS Authentication tab](#)
  - [Requirements for phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [Enabling phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration](#)
    - [phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options](#)
- [Community Administration](#)
- [User Features tab](#)
- [Community General Settings Tab](#)
  - [General Description](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Typical Uses](#)
- [Friendship Network tab](#)
- [Admin Profiles Page](#)
  - [For more information](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Requirements](#)

- [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
  - [Tiki 3.x](#)
- [Requirements](#)
- [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
  - [Tiki 3.x](#)
- [Apply Profiles tab](#)
- [Profiles Advanced tab](#)
- [Look & Feel](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
    - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [Theme tab](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
    - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [General Layout Options tab](#)
- [Shadow Layer tab](#)
- [Pagination Links tab](#)
- [UI Effects tab](#)
- [Custom CSS tab](#)
- [Miscellaneous tab](#)
- [Internationalization \(i18n\)](#)
  - [Overview](#)
- [Babelfish Links](#)
- [Customized String Translation tab](#)
  - [Feature Modules](#)
  - [User's Configuration Modules](#)
  - [Navigation Modules](#)
  - [Recent Changes Modules](#)
  - ["Best of" Modules](#)
  - [Help and Support Modules](#)
  - [Search Modules](#)
  - [MyTiki Modules](#)
  - [Miscellaneous Modules](#)
- [Modules](#)
  - [Modules vs. Plugins](#)
  - [Related pages](#)

- [Tiki Modules](#)
  - [More information.](#)
- [Meta Tags Config](#)
- [Meta Tags Configuration page](#)
- [Performance Admin page](#)
- [Performance Tab](#)
- [Bytecode Cache Tab](#)
- [Wiki tab](#)
- [Database tab](#)
- [Memcache tab](#)
- [Plugins tab](#)
- [Major Slowdown tab](#)
- [Sessions tab](#)
  - [General Security](#)
  - [Spam Protection](#)
  - [Search Results](#)
  - [Site Access](#)
  - [Tokens](#)
  - [Clipperz Online Password Management](#)
- [Security Administration](#)
  - [Prevent automatic/robot registration](#)
- [Spam Protection tab](#)
- [Clipperz online password manager](#)
- [Comments Admin page](#)
- [Comments](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Feeds Admin page](#)
- [Feeds](#)
  - [Overview](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Setting up feeds](#)
  - [More information](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Feeds General Preferences tab](#)
- [Feeds](#)
- [Connect page](#)
  - [Calculation configuration](#)
- [Advanced Ratings page](#)
- [Advanced Rating](#)
  - [Sorting items according to advanced rating](#)

- [Set-up](#)
- [Reference](#)
  - [mul \(Multiply\)](#)
  - [add \(Sum\)](#)
  - [rating-average and rating-sum](#)
  - [str](#)
  - [article-info](#)
  - [attribute](#)
- [Appendix](#)
- [Related](#)
- [Wiki Admin page](#)
  - [Dumps](#)
- [Wiki General Preferences tab](#)
- [Wiki Features tab](#)
  - [Admin preferences and setup](#)
- [Wiki Staging & Approval tab](#)
- [Wiki Page Staging and Approval](#)
  - [Sample use case](#)
    - [Features that will be apparent](#)
    - [Important notes about creating new pages](#)
    - [Important admin notes](#)
  - [Limitations](#)
  - [Profile](#)
- [Wiki Page Listings tab](#)
- [File Galleries](#)
  - [Key features](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki6](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki5](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki3](#)
  - [From Here](#)
  - [Alias](#)
  - [See Also](#)
- [Blogs](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
  - [About Trackback](#)
  - [About XMLRPC](#)
  - [Blog Revamp](#)
- [Image Galleries](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
- [Articles](#)

- [Feature Overview](#)
  - [Topics](#)
  - [Article Types](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Forums](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
- [Trackers \(Overview\)](#)
  - [What are Trackers?](#)
  - [Related Pages](#)
  - [Four Steps to make a Tracker](#)
  - [What can Trackers be used for?](#)
  - [Demos of Trackers used for production](#)
  - [Related links](#)
  - [Profiles](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Polls](#)
  - [Related Pages](#)
  - [Using Polls](#)
    - [Polls as a Plugin](#)
    - [Polls as a Side Module](#)
    - [Permissions](#)
    - [Polls and Anonymous](#)
- [Poll templates](#)
- [Calendar](#)
- [New in version 2 and version 3](#)
- [General](#)
  - [Example](#)
- [Categories](#)
  - [Category Permissions](#)
- [Score](#)
  - [How scoring works](#)
  - [How stars work](#)
  - [Typical Uses](#)
  - [Related pages](#)
- [Tags](#)
- [Tags](#)
  - [What can I tag within Tiki?](#)
  - [Modules](#)
  - [User](#)
  - [Alias](#)



- [Freetags General Settings tab](#)
  - [Admin](#)
    - [Freetag Browsing](#)
    - [Tag Management](#)
    - [Freetag 3D Browser Configuration](#)
  - [Perms](#)
- [Search](#)
- [Search](#)
- [Overview](#)
- [Search General Settings tab](#)
- [Search Results tab](#)
- [FAQs](#)
- [Directory](#)
- [Directory](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
- [Maps](#)
- [Google Maps](#)
- [Copyright](#)
- [Copyright Management User](#)
  - [Editing Copyright Notices](#)
- [User Files](#)
- [User Files](#)
  - [Configuring userfiles](#)
- [Messages](#)
- [Webmail](#)
- [Webmail](#)
  - [Configuring webmail accounts](#)
  - [Reading emails](#)
  - [Writing emails](#)
- [WYSIWYG](#)
- [Wysiwyg Editor](#)
- [Site Ads and Bannders](#)
- [Intertiki](#)
- [Introduction](#)
  - [Assumptions:](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Configuration example](#)
    - [Explanation of fields](#)
      - [Server Setup](#)
      - [Client Setup](#)

- [Pictoral Examples](#)
- [Intertiki client 1: doc.tikiwiki.org](#)
- [Intertiki client 2: edu.tikiwiki.org](#)
- [Intertiki Server: tikiwiki.org](#)
- [Hosting example](#)
- [Intertiki internal details](#)
  - [Get version : `intertiki:get\_version`](#)
  - [Remote login : `intertiki.validate`](#)
  - [Future enhancements](#)
  - [Trouble shooting](#)

# Introduction

The **Intertiki** feature allows Tikis to communicate user data with each other. It's based on xmlrpc protocol (thus, you need xmlrpc feature enabled in your Tiki, which can be set in the tiki wiki features control). It can be extended to several applications if those applications can communicate via XMLRPC. It was introduced in Tiki branch 1.9 to allow cross site authentication in all the tikiwiki.org subdomains.

## *Assumptions:*

- The client IP must be fixed to have this feature working
- As of Tiki 3.0, the InterTiki master must not exist behind an Apache authorization barrier. ([htpasswd](#))
- As of Tiki 3.0, the InterTiki Master must not use the Web authorization method.

## *Key Function and sub-features*

Interiki's primary design is meant to achieve master-slave authentication relationships between multiple Tiki sites. It's designed to allow several satellite sites authenticate against one central source for user data.

Additionally Intertiki can be used to transfer user profiles from the primary user source and their corresponding groups. Both of these choices are configurable and allow for a wide range of authentication and user data share paradigms.

Intertiki can be extended for several other purposes with additional custom development utilizing XMLRPC's ability to query just about any asset of user data in a tiki.

## *Configuration example*

In order to enable Intertiki for proper configuration, four key steps are required:

1. Enable "Intertiki" in the TikiWiki feature controls on **both** the master and slave(s)
2. Enable "XMLRPC" in the TikiWiki feature controls on **both** the master and slave(s)
3. On the "client" Tiki (the Tiki that will be requesting to authenticate against a master) change the "Authentication Method" to "Web Server" in the Log-in feature page.
4. Configure the server and client(s) based on the example information below making changes for

your deployment where necessary.

## *Explanation of fields*

### *Server Setup*

On the machine you will configure to be the primary authentication server (a Master that other Tiki's will request user data from) these are the fields that matter on the Intertiki feature page:

- **Intertiki Server Enabled:** Check this to make this machine an Intertiki Server
- **Intertiki shared cookie for sliding auth under same domain:** When enabled a user who logs into or out of any site(slaves or master) is automatically logged into or out of all other sites. (feature rememberme must be on)
- **Access Log File:** location, from your tiki root dir, where you want the access log file stored.
  - *a few examples here would be nice. Does this path start with "/" or not. Is it a URL or a direct path to a file from the root of the server?*
- **Error Log File:** location, from your tiki root dir, where you want the error log file stored

The table after allows you to define multiple clients. Only clients on this list will be allowed to make requests against the server. This is useful, and necessary, security feature:

- **Name:** Arbitrary name used to uniquely identify this configuration (does not effect operation). Recommend use of a name that indicates the client server (ex: doc.tw.o)
- **Key:** This is the shared key you define. It has to match the client configuration for your server. It can be as short or as long as you like. It is recommended you follow the same kind of password policies your organization would have for something like a wireless WEP key.
- **IP:** The physical IP address the client machine will be making requests to the server from. *If the client is on the same machine, you should be able to use 127.0.0.1*
- **Contact:** username of primary contact on client machine. Useful for administration

### *Client Setup*

**IMPORTANT:** On your client machine (machine that will request auth from the master server) you MUST have set the Authentication Type to "Web Server" on the Log In admin control page or Intertiki will not work.

*In Tiki 3.0, it is useful to start by first entering the InterTiki Server fields first.*

The InterTiki Server fields are for defining for every master server you want to have access to from this

client

- **Name:** Set the name of your target server as defined in the server name field of the master. Use a distinct, but easily understood value.
- **host:** The full URL of the master servers primary Tiki (ex: <http://www.tikiwiki.org>).
  - Note, even if your Tiki is not at the top level of your web directory, you will still use the site's URL per the ex. above.
- **port:** The port number the master tikiwiki responds to HTTP on (usually 80).
  - Note: as of Tiki 3.0, HTTP is the assumed method for XML\_RPC interchange.
- **path:** the full path (from the URL root) to the PHP file containing the XMLRPC handler on the server
  - EX 1: If the master tiki resides at the root of the site, you would enter `"/remote.php"`
  - EX 2: Say the master tiki is found at <http://www.mydomain.com/tiki/mytiki>, you would enter `"/tiki/mytiki/remote.php"` in this field.
- **Groups:** Groups on the master to authenticate to (only auth users in the groups defined, case-sensitive).
  - *is this required, or can it be blank?*

*Click SAVE and then proceed to the upper-half of the InterTiki Client setup screen*

- **Tiki Unique Key:** This must match the shared key entered in the Master's key field.
- **xxxxx As Master:** Use the drop down list to select the master server you just setup.
- **Import User Preferences:** Check this box if you want your client Tiki to copy the user preferences from the master server (NOTE: This will overwrite local user preferences every time the user logs in)
- **Import User Groups:** Check this box if you want the groups the user belongs to on the master server to be imported (along with their security defintions). NOTE: This will overwrite local groups every time a user logs in.
- **Limit Group Import:** A comma separated list of case-sensitive group names. This list will limit the group import feature to only those groups listed here.
- **Intertiki shared cookie for sliding auth under same domain:** When enabled a user who logs into or out of any site(slaves or master) is automatically logged into or out of all other sites. (feature rememberme must be on).

## *Pictoral Examples*

You can see below an example of two Tiki clients ([doc.tikiwiki.org](http://doc.tikiwiki.org), [edu.tikiwiki.org](http://edu.tikiwiki.org)) configuration using Intertiki against [tikiwiki.org](http://tikiwiki.org) as a master server.

### *Intertiki client 1: doc.tikiwiki.org*



### *Intertiki client 2: edu.tikiwiki.org*



### *Intertiki Server: tikiwiki.org*



## *Hosting example*

Please find below an example of successful setup at a hosting environment (siteground)

gezzaz notes:

- the setup below is not so much different than above but I was struggling a while to get it right, so I decided to share it. I was stuck with error message saying that the key is not valid but it was entered correctly >> **I think I got this error because changing the key on the master side is not performed correctly. You will get the above error if you decide to change your key on the master and make a save. So you have to delete the whole config row on the master and enter the values again if you wish to make changes. On the client side you can change the key without removing the old entry, it got updated for me**
- Please interpret *mydomain.com* to your domain name

Starting ground:

- main domain called "**mydomain.com**" - this is the master
- a subdomain called "**sub.mydomain.com**" (defined using Cpanel's Subdomain maintenance feature) - this will be

the client

- tiki for mydomain.com is installed in the www root folder (public\_html/)
- tiki for sub.mydomain.com is installed in the "subdomain" subfolder of the www root (public\_html/subdomain/)
- at master tiki *XMLRPC API* and *Intertiki* features are enabled
- at client tiki *XMLRPC API* and *Intertiki* features are enabled, at *Login* feature *Authentication method* option is set to *Web Server*

### MASTER settings

**Name** mydomain.com  
**Key** you choose, for example: 123456789abcdefghijlm  
**IP** the IP address of the server where mydomain.com resides (just ping mydomain.com and you will know)  
**Contact** enter your name or whatever you like, not important

### CLIENT settings

#### *InterTiki Server section*

*(define this first)*

**Name** mydomain.com  
**Host** <http://www.mydomain.com>  
**Port** 80  
**Path** /remote.php  
**Groups** empty

#### *InterTiki Client section*

*(select this after server is defined)*

**Tiki Unique key** as defined at the master, in this example  
123456789abcdefghijlm  
**InterTiki Slave mode** mydomain.com as master  
**Import user preferences** checked  
**Import user groups** checked  
**Limit group import** empty

## ***Intertiki internal details***

### ***Get version : `intertiki:get_version`***

Used for debugging at this time. Future plans include the ability to limit requests based on a minimally defined TikiWiki version.

### ***Remote login : `intertiki.validate`***

This enables the ability to use a tiki account created on one tiki, at another tiki. One tiki is server, the other is client (client will authenticate against the server). The server has to identify a url where the xmlrpc requests can be reached. The client uses that url to reach server and send xmlrpc requests. (Typically this is: <http://yourtiki/remote.php>, as the XMLRPC server handler code is located in the remote.php file in your tiki root directory).

The idea is to avoid creating a local account such remote logins. At this time, a local account is automatically created on the client Tiki when a client successfully authenticates against an Intertiki master server if that account does not already exist. Intertiki clients support the use of the @ as a delimiter for specifying the 'realm' the login belongs to when a user is logging in. This feature is primarily useful if a client Tiki can authenticate against more than one master tiki allowing for complex Intertiki relationships between Tiki sites. Some changes are made here and there to avoid a new client login containing a @ access certain features (like preferences and such).

Upon successful login from a remote intertiki server, the client will log the user into the local client Tiki. If the options are chosen it will also transfer the users preferences and group security settings from the master Interiki server.

Each validation request also sends a hash key that sort of identifies the client server. Eventually the use of that key will be optional. However a good security practice will be to keep it in place, especially if your Tiki is publicly available on the web.

### ***Future enhancements***

In the login box a new menu is proposed with that when enabled via login features will list the possible master auth locations, either local or remote. The user could also type login@remote directly it will be processed correctly.

### ***Trouble shooting***

- check the IP is the right one by checking the tiki Logs
- check that the error log and the access log are writeable by the server
- if your client does not have a static IP and you need to specify an IP range in the server settings check out a temp fix here: [http://dev.tikiwiki.org/tiki-view\\_tracker\\_item.php?itemId=1878](http://dev.tikiwiki.org/tiki-view_tracker_item.php?itemId=1878)



#### Related Links

- <http://www.xmlrpc.com/>
- <http://phpxmlrpc.sourceforge.net/> (on which is based the xmlrpc pear lib used in tiki)
- <http://tikiwiki.org/InterTiki>
- [TRIM](#) to manage many TikiWikis!

#### alias

- [Intertiki Config](#)
- 

## *Intertiki Client tab*

### Overview

Set up Intertiki Client (Slave) Sites using this tab

### Related Topics

- [reference](#)

### To Access

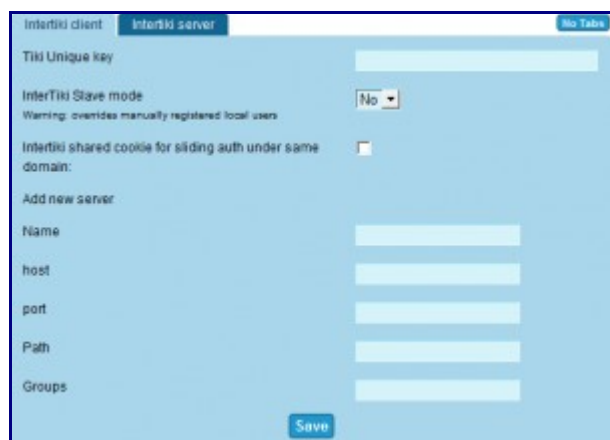
From the [Intertiki](#) page, click the **Intertiki client** tab.

### Note

*set up the Intertike Master using the associated **Intertiki server** tab*

### [No Tabs](#)

### [6.x](#)



Intertiki client tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Intertiki Client Tab</b>		
Tiki Unique Key	This field must match the shared key entered in the Master's key field for this server.	
InterTiki Slave Mode:	Select Yes to enable Slave Mode, where the Master (Intertiki Server) takes over user authentication.	No
<b>Add new server</b>		
Name:	Set the name (label) to use for your target server as defined in the server name field of the master.	
host:	The full URL of the master servers primary Tiki (ex: <a href="http://www.tikiwiki.org">http://www.tikiwiki.org</a>	
port:	The port number the master tikiwiki responds to HTTP on (usually 80)	
Path:	the full path (from the URL root) to the PHP file containing the XMLRPC handler on the server	
Groups:	Groups on the master to authenticate to (only auth users in the groups defined, case-sensitive)	

## Intertiki Server tab

### Overview

Set up Intertiki Server (Master) Sites using this tab

### Related Topics

- [reference](#)

### To Access

From the [Intertiki](#) page, click the **Intertiki server** tab.

## Note

set up the Intertike Slave using the associated **Intertiki client** tab

## No Tabs

### 6.x



Intertiki server tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Intertiki Server Tab</b>		
Intertiki shared cookie for sliding auth under same domain:	When enabled a user who logs into or out of any site(slaves or master) is automatically logged into or out of all other sites. (note: feature <i>rememberme</i> must be enabled).	
Access Log file:	Name of file where you want Access Logs to be stored	
Errors Log file:	Name of file where you want Error Logs to be stored	
<b>Known Hosts (New):</b>		
Name:	Set the name (label) to use for your client (Slave) server	
Key:	This field must match the shared key entered in the Client's (Slave) key field for this server	
IP:	IP address of the Client (Slave) server. If unsure Ping it by domain name	
Contact:	Not used by Tiki, but enter any information which might be valuable	

# Webservice Registration

## Overview

With this feature you can pull data from any JSON or SOAP enabled service, for example from Yahoo:

## Related Topics

- [Webservice Plugin](#)
- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Webservice Registration** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or  
Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=webservices>

## Note

*This feature is managed using the [Webservice Plugin](#)*

## No Tabs

### 6.x

Enter the URL of a web services returning either JSON or YAML. Parameters can be specified by enclosing a name between percentage signs. For example: %name%, %service% and %template% are reserved keywords and cannot be used.

## Search Engine Friendly URL

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Settings</b>		
URL of JSON or YAML web service (first input area):	Enter the URL here. See <a href="#">PluginWebservice</a> for instructions	
Parameters for the JSON or YAML web service (second input area):	Enter the URL here. See <a href="#">PluginWebservice</a> for instructions	

# Search Engine Friendly URL

## Overview

This feature shortens and simplifies URLs, which make them both more friendly for users and for search engines

## Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the SEFURL icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or

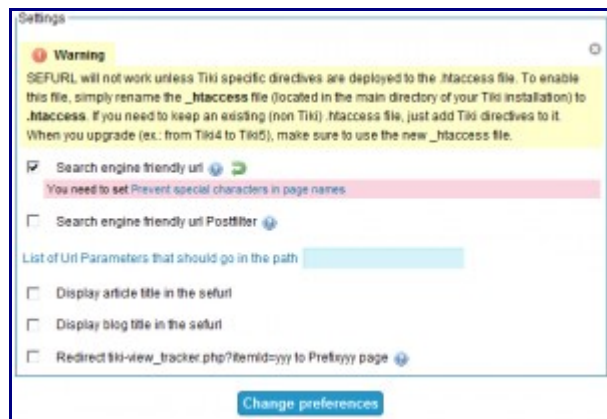
Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=sefurl>

## Note

*Search Engine Friendly URLs will not work unless the .htaccess file is enabled. [Instructions for enabling .htaccess](#)*

## No Tabs

### 6.x



## Search Engine Friendly URL

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Settings</b>		
Search engine friendly url:	Enable this feature - Note: set the <i>prevent special characters in page names</i> setting	

Setting	Description	Default
Search engine friendly url Postfilter:	Do not enable this feature as most Tiki features output friendly URLs and this feature has high processor overhead" setting	
List of Url Parameters that should go in the path:	Additional parameters such as country or language can go here. The instructions are on the <a href="#">Clean URLs page</a>	
Display article title in the sefurl:	The Article Title rather than Article number can be used in the sefurl. The instructions are on the <a href="#">Clean URLs page</a>	
Display blog title in the sefurl:	The Blog Title rather than Article number can be used in the sefurl. The instructions are on the <a href="#">Clean URLs page</a>	
Redirect tiki-view_tracker.php?itemId=yyy to Prefixyyy page:	This feature uses the <a href="#">Wiki Prefix Alias Feature</a>	

---

# Video

## Overview

Information here

## Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access



Click the **Video** icon on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or

Access <http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=video>

## Tabs

This page contains the following tabs:

- [Kaltura](#)
- [Ustream Watershed](#)

---

## *Kaltura tab*

## Overview

information

## Related Topics

- reference

## To Access

From the [Video](#) page, click the **Kaltura** tab.

## Note

*if applicable*

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x4.x](#)



## Kaltura tab

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Activate the Feature</b>		
Kaltura	Activate Kaltura Video	
<b>Kaltura/Tiki Config</b>		
Kaltura User:	Your Kaltura User Name - you could use your host name	
Kaltura Service URL:	URL of the Kaltura Service	
<b>Kaltura Partner Settings</b>		
Partner ID:	Your Partner Settings ID	
User secret:	Kaltura User Secret	
Admin secret:	Kaltura Admin Secret	
<b>Kaltura Dynamic Player</b>		
KDP UI Configuration ID:	Kaltura Dynamic Player User Interface ID	
KDP Widget ID:	Kaltura Dynamic Player Widget ID	
<b>Kaltura Contribution Wizard</b>		
KCW UI Configuration ID:	Kaltura Configuration Wizard ID	



Setting	Description	Default
Kaltura Simple Editor UI Configuration ID:	Kaltura Simple Remix Editor UI Configuration ID	
Kaltura Advanced Editor UI Configuration ID:	Kaltura Simple Remix Editor UI Configuration ID	

Setting	Description	Default
<b>Fieldset or section</b>		
Field name	Description	Value

## *Kaltura Video Editing*



Kaltura

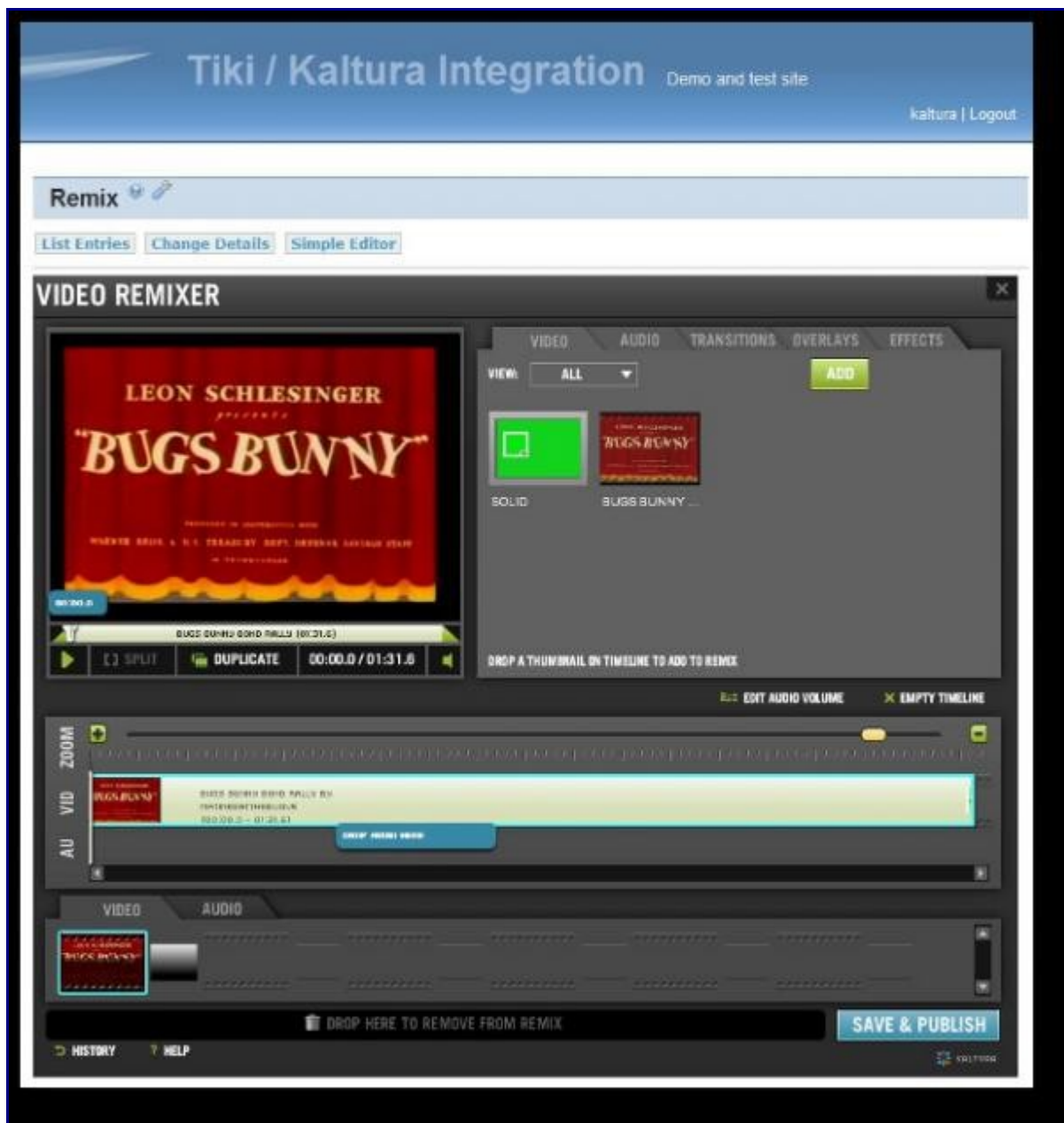
Video Editing through Kaltura is a new feature in [Tiki4](#). You need a Kaltura account to use Kaltura online services this feature in Tiki or use The Kaltura community edition.

Tiki6 is tested with Kaltura CE 2.0 and Kaltura hosted services.

**Goal:** To bring a wiki approach to video within the Tiki framework.

Implementation:

- Kaltura Contribution Wizard to upload media(audio,video,image) under a user.
- Kaltura Advance Editor/ Kaltura Simple Editor to create/edit/remix user uploaded media.
- A gallery list of all the media,remix videos of a user.
- Wikiplugin to include a Kaltura video on a wiki page.
- View and edit an information about a user's Kaltura entry.



## 1. Setting up a Kaltura account in Tiki

To enable and Configure Kaltura, go to *Admin Home > Features > New (tab) > Kaltura* and complete the configuration parameters, which are described below:

Parameters for Kaltura in Tiki Admin panel

### Kaltura Partner

A person or an organization with an account on the Kaltura system. Commonly, it is possible to become a Kaltura Partner either by manually signing up, or by registering to Kaltura during the installation process of a Kaltura application. Kaltura Partner ID is a numeric identifier, uniquely identifying one Kaltura Partner within the Kaltura database. On registering for a Kaltura Partner account, you will get e-mail from Kaltura with the following information.

- Partner ID: This is your Partner Id in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki.
- Sub-Partner ID:
- Administrator Email:
- Administrator Password:
- Web Service Admin-Secret: This is your Admin Secret in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki.
- Web Service Secret: This is your User Secret in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki.

### KCW

Kaltura Contributor Wizard, Kaltura widget for content ingestion; a flash wizard that provide an easy to use, friendly, and customizable user interface for uploading and importing media and content. The CW can be configured using an xml configuration file. The CW configuration file defines different customization aspects:

- List of media providers (e.g. file upload, webcam, import from different sources) available to the user.
- Graphical skinning and locale of the different parts of the wizard.
- Parameters defining the behavior of the wizard such as the default media provider.

The xml configuration files can be created and stored on kaltura server through kaltura api [Test Console](#). The stored xml configuration is identified by an id. The id of the desired configuration should be set as KCW UI Configuration Id in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki which is by default 36200. You can contact Kaltura for more customization. [More Info](#)

### KDP

Kaltura Dynamic Player, a highly flexible movie player. In order to embed a KDP on a web page a developer should first create a widget or use one of the available widgets which describes the

settings of the required player. Every Kaltura partner is provided with a default widget identified by `_ {PartnerId}` (For example, `_201`). KDP can be configured using an xml configuration file. The configuration file defines the graphical layout and functionality of the different parts of the player. The xml configuration files can be created and stored on kaltura server through kaltura api [Test Console](#) or through an UI wizard in the Kaltura Management Console. The id of the desired configuration should be set as KDP UI Configuration Id in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki which is by default 48411. [More Info](#)

## KSE/KAE

Kaltura Standard Editor and Kaltura Advanced Editor are customizable flash video editor enabling end users to mash up videos and images, add audio tracks and enrich their video mix with transitions. These editor offers a robust set of features in an intuitive and easy to use interface. The Kaltura Advanced Editor offers the most comprehensive set of tools available today for online video editing. The editor can be configured using an XML configuration file. The configuration file defines different customization aspects:

- Graphical skinning and locale of the different parts of the edito.
- Configuration id for the Kaltura Contributor Wizard (KCW) used to add more media.

The xml configuration files can be created and stored on Kaltura server through kaltura api [Test Console](#). The stored xml configuration is identified by an id. The ids of the desired configurations should be set for KSE UI Configuration Id and KAE UI Configuration Id in the Kaltura Admin Configuration in Tiki which are by default 36300(KSE) and 1000865(KAE). You can contact Kaltura for more customization. [More Info](#)

Below is a screenshot of the admin configuration page for Kaltura:



## 2. Using Kaltura feature in Tiki

To embed a Kaltura media or mix into a wiki page, use Tiki wikiplugin syntax

Wikiplugin Kaltura

```
{kaltura id="entry id"}
```

For more information, visit:

- [Kaltura CE](#)
- development info: [Kaltura](#)
- project site: <http://tv.tiki.org>
- <http://www.kaltura.org/project/tikiwiki-kaltura>
- <http://www.crunchbase.com/company/kaltura>

Aliases

[Video Editing](#) | [Collaborative Video Editing](#) | [Wiki Video Editing](#) | [Video](#) | [Kaltura Video](#)

---

## *Ustream Watershed tab*

### Overview

Ustream Watershed Webcasting Platform

### Related Topics

- [reference](#)

### To Access

From the [Video](#) page, click the **Ustream Watershed** tab.

[No Tabs](#)

[6.x](#)

Ustream Watershed Registration

If you don't have a Watershed account, you can find out more about it here.

Activate the feature

☒ Ustream Watershed

☐ Log errors to Tiki log

Configuration within Watershed

Set the webservice to point to tiki-watershed\_service.php on your site, and turn on Authentication Lock.

Watershed Wiki plugins

Use Wiki plugins WatershedBroadcaster, WatershedViewer and WatershedChat to embed your broadcaster, viewer or chat.

Basic tracker settings

Tracker

Information for each channel is stored in a tracker. Tracker item view/modify permissions will determine which channels users will be able to view or broadcast to respectively. You can find the Brand Id and Channel Code from the embed codes provided by Watershed, looking for the cid variable which will be "brandId%2Fchannelcode"

Tracker ID of Channel tracker:

Field ID of BrandId:

Field ID of ChannelCode:

Archive settings

Tracker

Information on archived clips are stored in a tracker. Tracker item view permissions will determine which archives users will be able to view. Note that recordings set to private in the broadcaster are not added to Tiki. Also, there is a delay for information to be received which could be quite long (30 min).

Tracker ID of Archive tracker:

Field ID of videoid:

Field ID of BrandId for Archive:

Field ID of ChannelCode for Archive:

Field ID of rtmpURL for Archive (url field type):

Field ID of flvURL for Archive (url field type):

Archive settings (optional)

Field ID of Date string for Archive:

Field ID of Duration for Archive:

Field ID of Filesize for Archive:

Field ID of Title for Archive:

Field ID of Description for Archive (textarea field type):

Field ID of Tags for Archive (freetags field type):

Flash Media Encoder

Flash Media Encoder

This is only needed if you are using Flash Media Encoder for higher-quality broadcasting which support only shared secret authentication.

Flash Media Encoder shared secret:

Save

## Social Networks tab

Setting	Description	Default
Activate the feature		

Setting	Description	Default
Ustream Watershed:	Activate this feature	
Log Errors to Tiki log	Capture Ustream Errors to the Tiki log~	
<b>Basic tracker settings</b>		
Tracker ID of Channel tracker:	One tracker is required per Channel, this is where the TrackerId goes	
Field ID of BrandId:	The Watershed BrandID should go into the Channel tracker as a text field, enter the FieldID number here	
Field ID of ChannelCode:	The Watershed ChannelCode should go into the Channel tracker as a text field, enter the FieldID number here	
<b>Archive settings</b>		
Tracker ID of Archive tracker:	A tracker is required to store Archive information	
Field ID of videoId:	Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed videoId is stored	
Field ID of BrandId for Archive:	Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed BrandId is stored	
Field ID of ChannelCode for Archive:	Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed ChannelCode is stored	
Field ID of rtmpURL for Archive (url field type):	Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed rtmpURL is stored. Note tracker field type must be a URL	
Field ID of fivURL for Archive (url field type):	Tracker FieldId number for where the Watershed fivURL is stored. Note tracker field type must be a URL	
<b>Archive settings (optional)</b>		
Field ID of Date string for Archive:	Tracker FieldId number for the text field where the date of recording is stored	
Field ID of Duration for Archive:	Tracker FieldId number for the text field where the duration of recording is stored	
Field ID of Filesize for Archive:	Tracker FieldId number for the text field where the file size of recording is stored	
Field ID of Title for Archive:	Tracker FieldId number for the text field where the title of the recording is stored	
Field ID of Description for Archive:	Tracker FieldId number for the textarea field where the description of the recording is stored	
Field ID of Tags for Archive:	Tracker FieldId number for the freetags field where freetags of the recording are stored	
<b>Flash Media Encoder</b>		
Flash Media Encoder shared secret:	Enter shared secret here, note required only if Flash Media Encoding is used	
Log Errors to Tiki log	Capture Ustream Errors to the Tiki log~	

## *Ustream Watershed*

Integration to Ustream Watershed live video streaming.

See also: [PluginWatershed](#)

<https://watershed.ustream.tv/>

<http://tikiwiki.svn.sourceforge.net/viewvc/tikiwiki?view=revision&revision=27711>

<http://tikiwiki.svn.sourceforge.net/viewvc/tikiwiki?view=revision&revision=27708>

alias

- [Ustream](#)
  - [Watershed](#)
-



# Social networks

## Overview

This feature integrates popular social networks (such as [Twitter](#) or [Facebook](#)) into Tiki.

## Related Topics

- [Bugs and Wishes](#)

## To access

Click the **Social Networks** icon  on the [Admin Panel](#)  
or  
Access **<http://yourdomain.com/tiki-admin.php?page=social>**

[No Tabs](#)  
[6.x](#)

**Activate the feature**

☒ Social networks ⓘ ⓘ

---

### Twitter Settings

Note ⓘ

To use Twitter integration, you must register this site as an application at [http://twitter.com/oauth\\_clients/](http://twitter.com/oauth_clients/) and allow write access for the application.  
Enter <your site URL>/iki-socialnetworks.php as callback URL.

Consumer key:  ⓘ

Consumer secret:  ⓘ

---

### Facebook Settings

Note ⓘ

To use Facebook integration, you must register this site as an application at <http://developers.facebook.com/setup/> and allow extended access for the application.  
Enter <your site URL>/iki-socialnetworks.php?request\_facebook as Site URL, and <your site> as Site Domain.

API key:  ⓘ

Application secret:  ⓘ

Application ID:  ⓘ

---

### Bitly Settings

Note ⓘ

There is no need to set up a site-wide bitly account, every user can have his or her own, but this allows for site-wide statistics  
Go to [http://bit.ly/a/sign\\_up](http://bit.ly/a/sign_up) to sign up for an account.  
Go to [http://bit.ly/a/your\\_api\\_key](http://bit.ly/a/your_api_key) to retrieve the API key.

Bitly Login:  ⓘ

Bitly Key:  ⓘ

☐ Use site-wide account ⓘ

**Change preferences**

## Social Networks tab

Setting	Description	Default
Social Networks	Activate Social Networking	
Consumer key	Twitter Site Consumer Key	
Consumer secret	Twitter Site Consumer Secret	
API key:	Facebook Site API key	
Application secret:	Facebook Site Application secret	
Application ID:	Facebook Site Application ID	
bit.ly Login:	bit.ly Site Consumer Key	
bit.ly Key:	bit.ly Site Key	
Use site-wide account:	Use bit.ly URIs for all URI communications	

## Note

The following content will eventually be migrated to the Social Networks section of the Tiki User and Admin Guides.

- [Tiki Reference Guide](#)
- [General Administration](#)
- [General Preferences tab](#)
- [General Settings tab](#)
- [Navigation tab](#)
- [Date and Time tab](#)
  - [Date and Time Formats](#)
- [Change Admin Password tab](#)
- [Features Admin](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.10\)](#)
    - [Major features](#)
    - [Minor features](#)
    - [Site-wide features](#)
    - [Technical Features](#)
    - [User interface enhancement features](#)
    - [Experimental Features](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
    - [User Features](#)
  - [Tiki sections and features \(1.9.x\)](#)
    - [Content Features](#)
    - [Administration Features](#)
      - [User Features](#)
- [General Layout options](#)
  - [Layout-per-section Options](#)
- [Global Features](#)
- [Interface](#)
- [Programmer](#)
- [New](#)
- [Experimental](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Login Administration page](#)
- [General Preferences](#)
  - [Case Sensitivity](#)
  - [Remember Me](#)
  - [Limit the session to a certain time of inactivity](#)

- [CustomFields](#)
- [LDAP Authentication starting from Tiki 4](#)
  - [Changes](#)
  - [Settings](#)
- [LDAP Authentication up to Tiki 3.X](#)
  - [LDAP §fe70dcc7b334983be9d46331092db03d§ General Settings Overview](#)
- [LDAP Authentication tab](#)
  - [How to know which LDAP Bind Type you need to use](#)
  - [How to get the email and other attributes back in Tiki](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Unix](#)
    - [Active Directory](#)
    - [Zimbra LDAP](#)
  - [Debugging](#)
  - [Common Problems and Workarounds](#)
    - [Certificate Problems](#)
  - [How it works](#)
    - [Group membership and permissions](#)
    - [How anonymous binding works](#)
  - [LDAP §b22ccde9d2a65de3a894a23f4dfd1551§ Troubleshooting](#)
- [Aliases](#)
- [PAM Authentication tab](#)
  - [AuthPAM](#)
    - [Admin Documentation](#)
    - [Requirements for AuthPAM](#)
    - [Permissions!](#)
    - [Security Issues](#)
  - [Shibboleth Step 1: Update the Wiki](#)
  - [Shibboleth step 2:Update Shibboleth](#)
  - [Intro](#)
    - [Mod phpcas](#)
  - [Notes from successful install \(with Tikiwiki 2.0RC4\)](#)
    - [Install](#)
- [CAS Authentication tab](#)
  - [Requirements for phpBB Authentication](#)
  - [Enabling phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 1: Enable phpBB Authentication](#)
    - [phpBB Step 2: Turn off User Registration](#)
    - [phpBB Step 3: Configure phpBB Authentication options](#)
- [Community Administration](#)

- [User Features tab](#)
- [Community General Settings Tab](#)
  - [General Description](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Typical Uses](#)
- [Friendship Network tab](#)
- [Admin Profiles Page](#)
  - [For more information](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
  - [Requirements](#)
  - [Details of Supported Profiles](#)
    - [Tiki 3.x](#)
- [Apply Profiles tab](#)
- [Profiles Advanced tab](#)
- [Look & Feel](#)
- [Alias](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
    - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [Theme tab](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Examples](#)
    - [Adding a banner logo so that it fills the top of your site.](#)
    - [And now put a specific image for each page next to the top banner logo](#)
- [General Layout Options tab](#)
- [Shadow Layer tab](#)
- [Pagination Links tab](#)
- [UI Effects tab](#)
- [Custom CSS tab](#)
- [Miscellaneous tab](#)
- [Internationalization \(i18n\)](#)
  - [Overview](#)
- [Babelfish Links](#)
- [Customized String Translation tab](#)
  - [Feature Modules](#)
  - [User's Configuration Modules](#)

- [Navigation Modules](#)
- [Recent Changes Modules](#)
- ["Best of" Modules](#)
- [Help and Support Modules](#)
- [Search Modules](#)
- [MyTiki Modules](#)
- [Miscellaneous Modules](#)
- [Modules](#)
  - [Modules vs. Plugins](#)
  - [Related pages](#)
- [Tiki Modules](#)
  - [More information.](#)
- [Meta Tags Config](#)
- [Meta Tags Configuration page](#)
- [Performance Admin page](#)
- [Performance Tab](#)
- [Bytecode Cache Tab](#)
- [Wiki tab](#)
- [Database tab](#)
- [Memcache tab](#)
- [Plugins tab](#)
- [Major Slowdown tab](#)
- [Sessions tab](#)
  - [General Security](#)
  - [Spam Protection](#)
  - [Search Results](#)
  - [Site Access](#)
  - [Tokens](#)
  - [Clipperz Online Password Management](#)
- [Security Administration](#)
  - [Prevent automatic/robot registration](#)
- [Spam Protection tab](#)
- [Clipperz online password manager](#)
- [Comments Admin page](#)
- [Comments](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Feeds Admin page](#)
- [Feeds](#)
  - [Overview](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)

- [Setting up feeds](#)
- [More information](#)
- [Alias](#)
- [Feeds General Preferences tab](#)
- [Feeds](#)
- [Connect page](#)
  - [Calculation configuration](#)
- [Advanced Ratings page](#)
- [Advanced Rating](#)
  - [Sorting items according to advanced rating](#)
  - [Set-up](#)
  - [Reference](#)
    - [mul \(Multiply\)](#)
    - [add \(Sum\)](#)
    - [rating-average and rating-sum](#)
    - [str](#)
    - [article-info](#)
    - [attribute](#)
  - [Appendix](#)
- [Related](#)
- [Wiki Admin page](#)
  - [Dumps](#)
- [Wiki General Preferences tab](#)
- [Wiki Features tab](#)
  - [Admin preferences and setup](#)
- [Wiki Staging & Approval tab](#)
- [Wiki Page Staging and Approval](#)
  - [Sample use case](#)
    - [Features that will be apparent](#)
    - [Important notes about creating new pages](#)
    - [Important admin notes](#)
  - [Limitations](#)
  - [Profile](#)
- [Wiki Page Listings tab](#)
- [File Galleries](#)
  - [Key features](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki6](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki5](#)
  - [File Gallery improvements in Tiki3](#)
  - [From Here](#)

- [Alias](#)
  - [See Also](#)
- [Blogs](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
  - [About Trackback](#)
  - [About XMLRPC](#)
  - [Blog Revamp](#)
- [Image Galleries](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
- [Articles](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
    - [Topics](#)
    - [Article Types](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Forums](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
- [Trackers \(Overview\)](#)
  - [What are Trackers?](#)
  - [Related Pages](#)
  - [Four Steps to make a Tracker](#)
  - [What can Trackers be used for?](#)
  - [Demos of Trackers used for production](#)
  - [Related links](#)
  - [Profiles](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Polls](#)
  - [Related Pages](#)
  - [Using Polls](#)
    - [Polls as a Plugin](#)
    - [Polls as a Side Module](#)
    - [Permissions](#)
    - [Polls and Anonymous](#)
- [Poll templates](#)
- [Calendar](#)
- [New in version 2 and version 3](#)
- [General](#)
  - [Example](#)
- [Categories](#)
  - [Category Permissions](#)
- [Score](#)



- [How scoring works](#)
- [How stars work](#)
- [Typical Uses](#)
- [Related pages](#)
- [Tags](#)
- [Tags](#)
  - [What can I tag within Tiki?](#)
  - [Modules](#)
  - [User](#)
  - [Alias](#)
- [Freetags General Settings tab](#)
  - [Admin](#)
    - [Freetag Browsing](#)
    - [Tag Management](#)
    - [Freetag 3D Browser Configuration](#)
  - [Perms](#)
- [Search](#)
- [Search](#)
- [Overview](#)
- [Search General Settings tab](#)
- [Search Results tab](#)
- [FAQs](#)
- [Directory](#)
- [Directory](#)
  - [Feature Overview](#)
- [Maps](#)
- [Google Maps](#)
- [Copyright](#)
- [Copyright Management User](#)
  - [Editing Copyright Notices](#)
- [User Files](#)
- [User Files](#)
  - [Configuring userfiles](#)
- [Messages](#)
- [Webmail](#)
- [Webmail](#)
  - [Configuring webmail accounts](#)
  - [Reading emails](#)
  - [Writing emails](#)
- [WYSIWYG](#)

- [Wysiwyg Editor](#)
- [Site Ads and Banners](#)
- [Intertiki](#)
- [Introduction](#)
  - [Assumptions:](#)
  - [Key Function and sub-features](#)
  - [Configuration example](#)
    - [Explanation of fields](#)
      - [Server Setup](#)
      - [Client Setup](#)
    - [Pictorial Examples](#)
    - [Intertiki client 1: doc.tikiwiki.org](#)
    - [Intertiki client 2: edu.tikiwiki.org](#)
    - [Intertiki Server: tikiwiki.org](#)
  - [Hosting example](#)
  - [Intertiki internal details](#)
    - [Get version : `intertiki:get\_version`](#)
    - [Remote login : `intertiki.validate`](#)
    - [Future enhancements](#)
    - [Trouble shooting](#)
- [Intertiki Client tab](#)
- [Intertiki Server tab](#)
- [Webservice Registration](#)
- [Search Engine Friendly URL](#)
- [Video](#)
- [Kaltura Video Editing](#)
  - [1. Setting up a Kaltura account in Tiki](#)
  - [2. Using Kaltura feature in Tiki](#)
- [Kaltura tab](#)
- [Ustream Watershed tab](#)
- [Ustream Watershed](#)
- [Social networks](#)
  - [Activate Twitter integration](#)
    - [User authorization](#)
  - [Setting up facebook integration](#)
    - [Step 0](#)
    - [Step 1](#)
    - [Step 2](#)
    - [Step 3](#)
    - [Step 4](#)

- [Step 5](#)
- [Step 6](#)
- [User authorization](#)
- [Setting up bit.ly as URL shortener](#)
- [Using twitter and facebook in shoutbox](#)
- [Using twitter and facebook to share a page](#)
- [Using ShareThis](#)

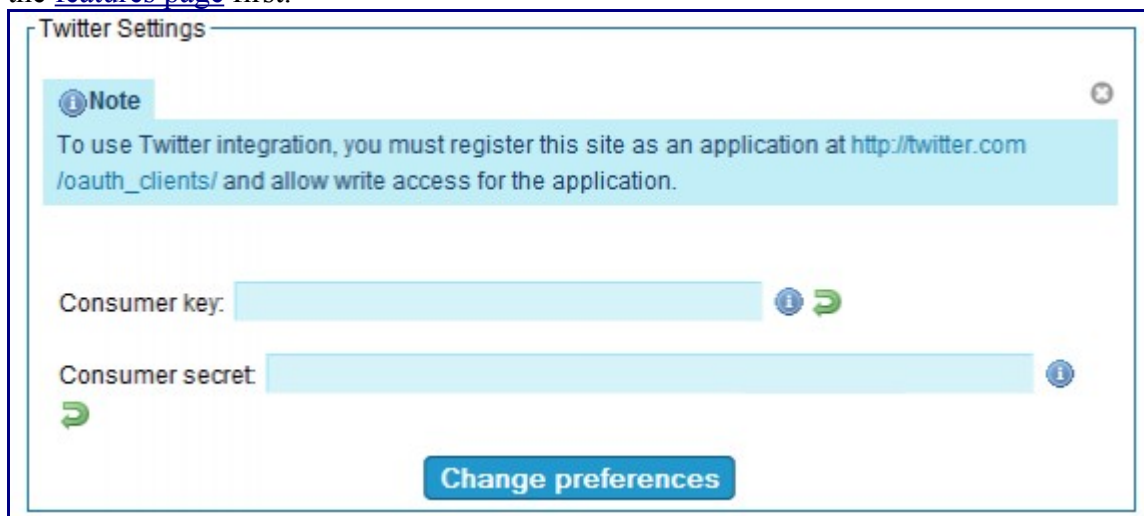
## Activate Twitter integration

First of all, go to the [Twitter page for new applications](#) and register your site as a new application.

As **Callback URL** you must give the URL for tiki-socialnetworks.php on your site. This is where users will be redirected when authorizing your app with oauth.

You also **must** ask for the access type **Read & Write** otherwise your users will not be allowed to tweet.

After registering your site, you get a **consumer key** and **consumer secret** which you must enter in the tab **Social networks** on the admin panel. If that tab is disabled, turn on the feature **Social networks** on the [features page](#) first.



Twitter Settings

**Note**  
To use Twitter integration, you must register this site as an application at [http://twitter.com/oauth\\_clients/](http://twitter.com/oauth_clients/) and allow write access for the application.

Consumer key:

Consumer secret:

[Change preferences](#)

To grant a group access to the social networks functionality, set the permission **user can use social network integration (tiki\_p\_socialnetworks)** for that group on the [Permissions](#) page.

## User authorization

Before being able to use the twitter integration, users must authorize the TikiWiki site by requesting an

oauth token.

This can be done via the **Social networks** tab on [My Tiki](#).

By clicking on the **Authorize** button, the user will be redirected to the twitter page, asking for confirmation. If the user agrees, an [oauth](#) token will be stored in the users preferences.

## *Setting up facebook integration*

First, you need to register a new application with facebook. This can be done via the [Developers tool](#). Later on, you can edit the Application via [Application settings](#) in your facebook profile.

### *Step 0*

On the Developer page click on [Set Up New Application](#) and enter a name for your Application, sell your soul (agree to the terms) and click on **Create Application**. After a successful captcha check, you can proceed with step 1.

You may need to login in facebook to accept the validation process in facebook (to allow the developer application use your account details in facebook, etc).

### *Step 1*

The name of your application is already set, so you don't need to enter a new one. Feel free to upload a logo and icon for your app. As I give support via e-Mail, I entered my email address for the users support.



### *Step 2*

Enter the site URL and the Site Domain. My test server is at test.ott-consult.de and tiki is at the URL for my test server is at <http://test.ott-consult.de/trunk>. The Site URL therefore is **http://test.ott-consult.de/trunk/tiki-socialnetworks.php?request\_facebook**.

Edit octestserver
Back to My Applications

About
Web Site
Facebook Integration
Mobile and Devices
Advanced

Core Settings

Application ID

1

38

Application Secret

7

4

Site URL

ott-consult.de/trunk/tiki-socialnetworks.php?request\_facebook

Site Domain

test.ott-consult.de

Your OAuth client\_id

Your OAuth client\_secret

Your site's URL

If set, Facebook will enable authentication on all subdomains (e.g., "example.com" will enable \*.example.com)

Save Changes

### Step 3

In this step, you don't to change anything since the **Post-Authorize Callback URL** field has been removed by Facebook.

About

Web Site

**Facebook Integration**

Mobile and Devices

Credits

Advanced

Core Settings

Application ID [REDACTED]

Application Secret [REDACTED]

Your OAuth client\_id

Your OAuth client\_secret

Canvas

Canvas Page [http://apps.facebook.com/\[REDACTED\]/](http://apps.facebook.com/[REDACTED]/) The base URL of your app on Facebook

Canvas URL  Facebook pulls the content for your app's canvas pages from this base URL.

Secure Canvas URL  Facebook uses this secure version of the Canvas URL when your app is accessed by a user over a secure connection (https).

Canvas Type ☒ IFrame ☐ FBML Choose whether your Canvas URL renders HTML in an iframe or returns FBML

IFrame Size ☒ Show scrollbars ☐ Auto-resize Choose "Auto-resize" if you are using FB.Canvas.setAutoResize in your iframe app and want the Canvas IFrame to grow to the height of your app's content

Bookmark URL  The URL to load when a user clicks your app's bookmark. If blank, this defaults to your Canvas Page

Discovery

Social Discovery ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled If social discovery is enabled, Facebook may highlight a user's usage of your app in News Feed and other places to help the user's friends discover your app.

Page Tabs

Tab Name  The title of your tab on a Page

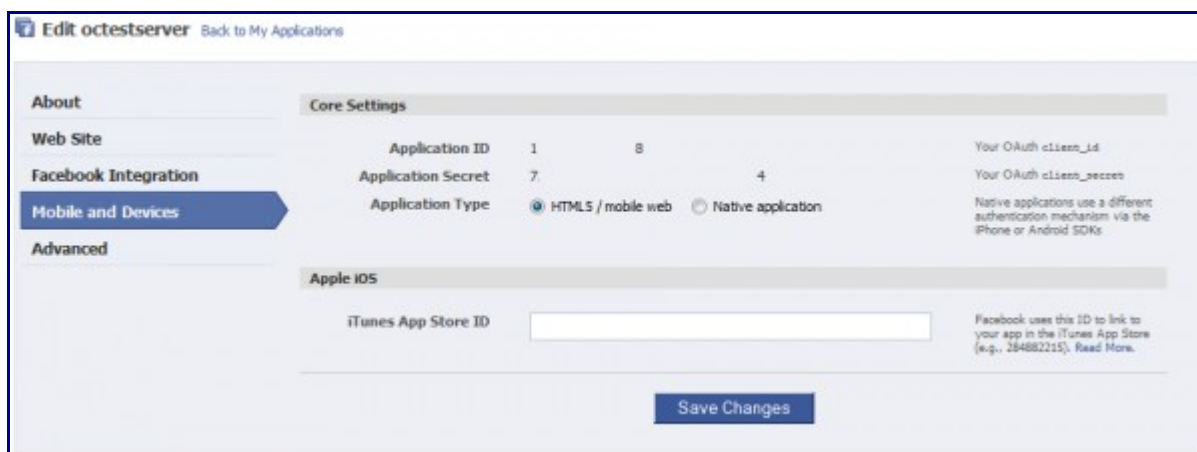
Tab URL [http://apps.facebook.com/\[CANVAS\\_URL\]/](http://apps.facebook.com/[CANVAS_URL]/) Facebook pulls content for your tab from this URL, which must be relative to your Canvas Page

Edit URL  URL at which Page administrators can edit app settings

Save Changes

## Step 4

Here, you choose the way your application authorizes with facebook. As it is set by default, just check that **HTML5/mobile web** for your **Application type** is selected.



Edit octestserver Back to My Applications

About

Web Site

Facebook Integration

Mobile and Devices

Advanced

Core Settings

Application ID 1 8

Application Secret 7 4

Application Type ☒ HTML5 / mobile web ☐ Native application

Your OAuth client\_id

Your OAuth client\_secret

Native applications use a different authentication mechanism via the iPhone or Android SDKs

Apple iOS

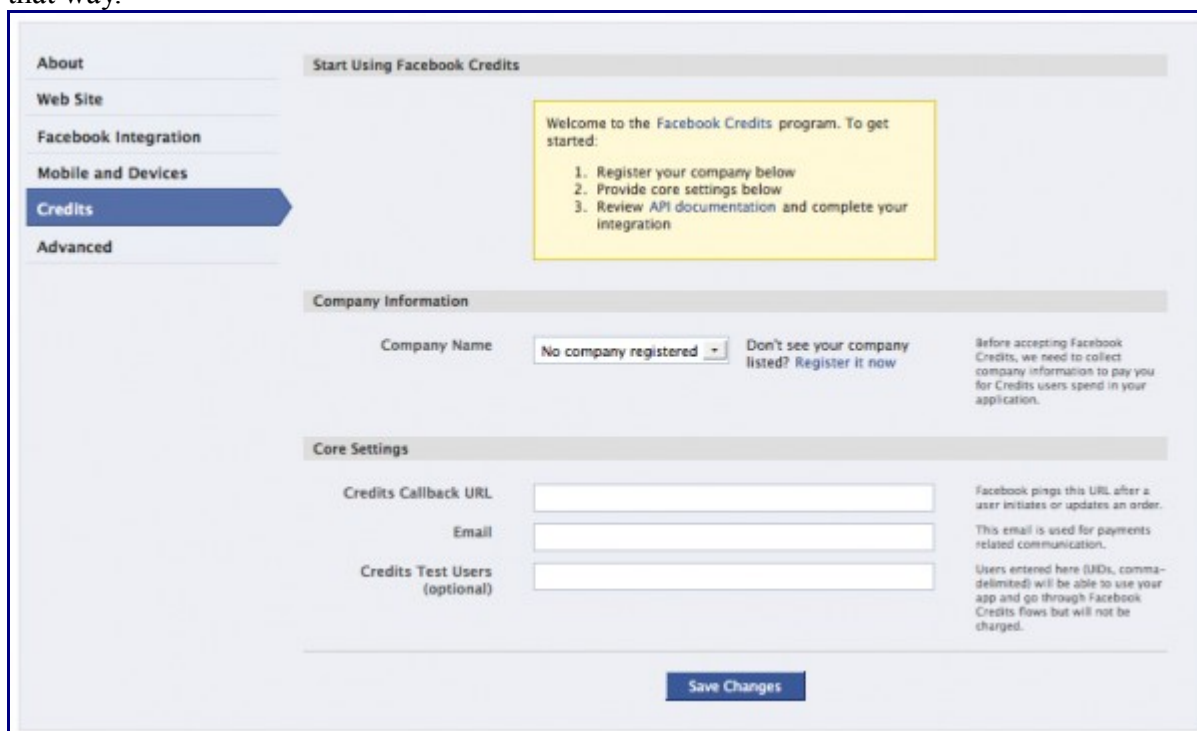
iTunes App Store ID

Facebook uses this ID to link to your app in the iTunes App Store (e.g., 284882215). Read More.

Save Changes

## Step 5

Start Using Facebook Credits, this financial/billing integration mostly not needed for Tikiwiki, leave it that way.



About

Web Site

Facebook Integration

Mobile and Devices

Credits

Advanced

Start Using Facebook Credits

Welcome to the Facebook Credits program. To get started:

1. Register your company below
2. Provide core settings below
3. Review API documentation and complete your integration

Company Information

Company Name No company registered Don't see your company listed? Register it now

Before accepting Facebook Credits, we need to collect company information to pay you for Credits users spend in your application.

Core Settings

Credits Callback URL

Email

Credits Test Users (optional)

Facebook pings this URL after a user initiates or updates an order.

This email is used for payments related communication.

Users entered here (UIDs, comma-delimited) will be able to use your app and go through Facebook Credits flows but will not be charged.

Save Changes

## Step 6

On this last step, you can give the facebook **Deauthorize Callback** which will be called, when a user disallows your application on facebook. Don't choose sandbox mode here.

Usually, your web server has a static IP address. By putting it on the **server whitelist**, you can add a bit of security, as only requests from that IP will be processed. If you run a server farm with multiple servers, add all IP addresses.

You can also uncheck all the "deprecated" setting, it won't hurt.



About

Web Site

Facebook Integration

Mobile and Devices

Credits

**Advanced**

### Authentication

Deauthorize Callback

Facebook pings this URL when a user deauthorizes your app.

Sandbox Mode ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

If enabled, only the developers of your app will be able to sign in to your app.

### Migrations

Disable Deprecated Auth Methods	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	Disables deprecated methods according to the deprecation roadmap.
Disable Deprecated Connect Methods	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	This method will be deprecated according to the deprecation roadmap.
Disable Deprecated Data Methods	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	Disables deprecated methods according to the deprecation roadmap.
Disable Deprecated FBML Methods	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	Disables deprecated methods according to the deprecation roadmap.
Disable Deprecated Permissions Methods	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	Disables deprecated methods according to the deprecation roadmap.
Disable Deprecated Profile Methods	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	Disables deprecated methods according to the deprecation roadmap.
Disable Deprecated SMS Methods	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	Disables deprecated methods according to the deprecation roadmap.
Stream post URL security	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	Links in stream posts must go to the application's canvas or connect URL.
OAuth 2.0 for Canvas	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	Includes a 'signed_request' parameter for canvas apps.
POST for Canvas	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled	Uses an HTTP POST for iframes on canvas.
Canvas Session Parameter (Deprecated)	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled	Includes a 'session' parameter for canvas apps. Please use 'OAuth 2.0 for Canvas' instead.
November 2010 Rollup	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled	This migration provides updates to the Facebook Platform that may break existing applications. See Migration details and timing.
Timezone-less events	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled	Facebook events do not support time zones. Accordingly, event start_time and end_time are now returned from the graph API without a time zone.
JSON Encoding Empty Arrays	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled	Properly encode empty JSON arrays as '[]' instead of '[]'.

### Security

Server Whitelist

If specified, Facebook will block requests from your app unless they come from an IP in this comma-separated list.

### Advertising

Advertising Accounts

Comma-separated list of Facebook advertising accounts associated with your app. Enter the email address you used when creating the account.

### Advanced Canvas Features

Preload FQL

Facebook will send the result of these FQL queries as JSON-encoded POST parameters to your Canvas URL.

Preload FQL Multiquery

Facebook will send the result of these FQL multiqueries as JSON-encoded POST parameters to your Canvas URL.

Now you created the application at facebook and you can enter the data on your tiki server. Go to Admin->Social networks and enter the data from facebook.

**Facebook Settings**

**Note**

To use Facebook integration, you must register this site as an application at <http://developers.facebook.com/setup/> and allow extended access for the application. Enter <your site URL>tiki-socialnetworks.php as connect URL.

API key: 1 1 ⓘ ➡

Application secret: 7 4 ⓘ ➡

Application ID: 1 8 ⓘ ➡

## User authorization

Before being able to use the facebook integration, users must authorize the TikiWiki site by requesting an oauth token.

This can be done via the **Social networks** tab on [My Tiki](#).

Note : As i (Bernard) authorize it i encounter an error from Facebook servers: "message": "Invalid redirect\_uri: Given URL is not allowed by the Application configuration."

I had to logout/login for Facebook to accept the authorization. It is possible also that you have to wait more than 15mn for the Facebook server to use the setting you just entered.

## Setting up bit.ly as URL shortener

At the moment, this is only used by the [Share](#) feature. By going to bit.ly, you can register and request a key. As Admin, you can force all users to use the site wide key which gives you a nice overview on the pages shared by your users and the feedback on that.



## *Using twitter and facebook in shoutbox*

When the site has been registered with twitter and/or facebook, an admin can allow the shoutbox module to show two additional checkboxes by setting the options "Tweet" and "Facebook".

If the user has the permission to use twitter/facebook and has authorized the site to send tweets or post to his facebook wall, the [Shoutbox](#) will offer a checkbox **Tweet with twitter** and a checkbox **Post on facebook wall**. By activating these checkboxes, in addition to sending a shout, the message will also sent by twitter or posted on your facebook wall.

## *Using twitter and facebook to share a page*

When the above prerequisites are given, a user who authorized the site with twitter/facebook can use the [Share](#) feature not only to send emails/internal messages, but also tweet them and like those pages on his facebook wall.

## *Using ShareThis*

You can also allow your users to send links from pages in your tiki to many social networking sites by means of the widget from ShareThis (<http://www.sharethis.com>).

Since [Tiki6](#) the widget "share this" is also available in blog posts if you enable it at: "**Admin home > Blogs > General Settings > Sharing on social networks > ShareThis buttons**"

And since [Tiki6.1](#), it's also available for articles: "**Admin home > Articles > General Settings > Sharing on social networks > ShareThis buttons**"

In trackers, you can use the widget "Share This" by means of adding a call to [PluginShareThis](#) in a static text field.

Related

- [Share](#)
- [PluginShareThis](#)

Aliases

[SocialNetwork](#) | [SocialNetworks](#) | [Social Network](#) | [Twitter](#) | [Facebook](#)

---

